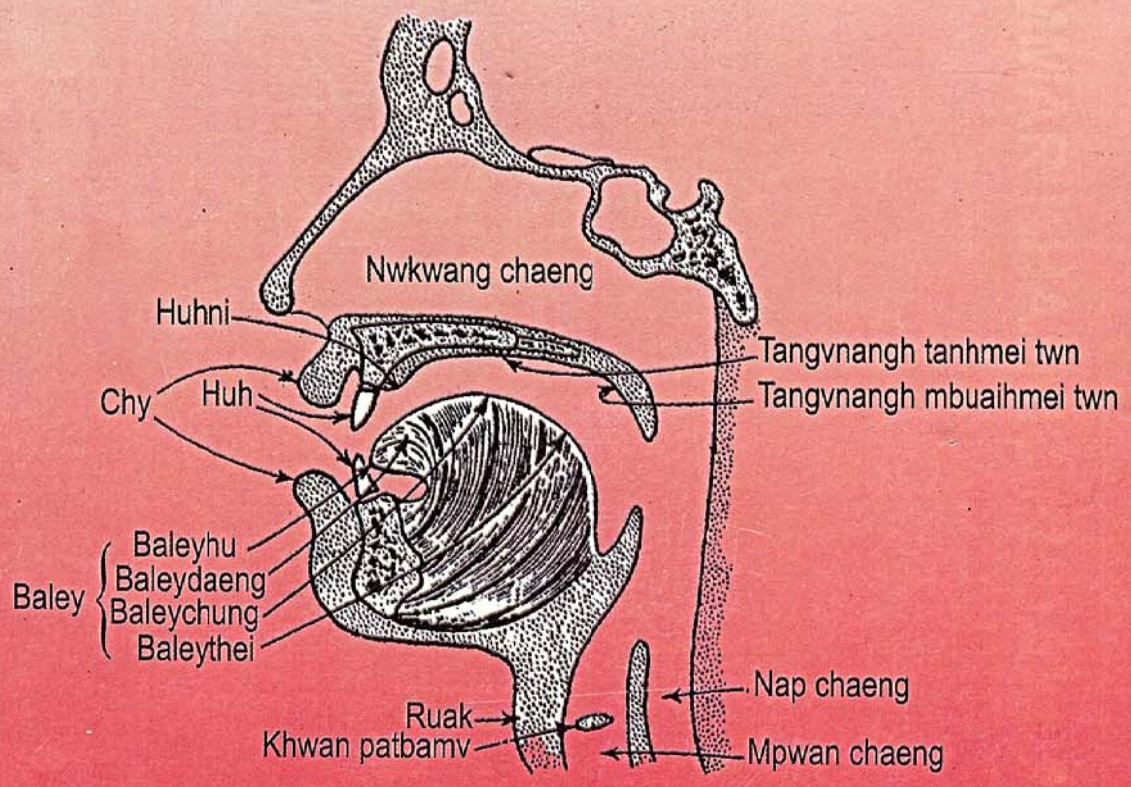
RUANGMEI GRAMMAR

Khatnic

PHUAKNA HYMEI

(Classes IX and X)



Latsaamei Naatnu

RUANGMEI LITERATURE SOCIETY

Prescribed as a textbook by the Board of Secondary Education, Manipur for Classes IX and X vide Orders No. A/TD/4/89/Part I dated Imphal, the 2nd January 2009

RUANGLAT GRAMMAR

khatnic

PHUAKNA HYMEI

(Classes IX and X)

Ragongning Gangmei

RUANGMEI LITERATURE SOCIETY

Printed with the Financial Assistance of Tribal Research Institute, Department of TD, Government of Manipur for the year 2015-16.

Published by :
Ruangmei Literature Society

© Ruangmei Literature Society

1st Print	:	2009
Copies	:	3000
Seeond Print	:	2014
Copies	:	5000
Third Print	:	2016
Copies	:	2000
Price	:	Rs. 100/-
Back Cover	:	Tamkhiangthai (Photo Ragongning Gangmei)
Front	:	Latsaamei Naatnu

Printed : *BCPW, 85-PDA, Super Market, Lamphelpat, Imphal-795004*

Consultant

Dr. Ch.Jashawanta Singh
Professor, Department of Linguistics, MU

Review Workshop khou kazauhmei nunc

Dr Ch.Jashawanta Singh
Professor, Department of Linguistics, MU
Linguist/Expert

Dr. W.Ibempishak Devi,
Chairperson, BSEM

L.Rajmohan Singh,
Secretary, BSEM

S.Mangi Singh,
Deputy Secretary, BSEM

C.P.Lungkubon,
Chairman,
Ruangmei Literature Committee, Manipur

Second Edition correction swloumei

Dr.Thuanreilung Phaomei

LATMUN

Class IX khatnic X curriculum hei kahunungc lwn khouteirui kalaihmei nai the. Mi hei nchamnac kapumc kahak kahak rui thay khang, aheih khang karamh mak gethei nchamloumei na rui thu nuh mak ge twmei phaydyng khou kasiamhloumei curriculum the. Mi curriculum bangc khouhei latrik kathumh ncham pwni.

* **Ruanglat Ncham kho**
  - Mi khouhei pary dangv, luchyam khatnic drama ramgai tii pwni.
* **Ruanglat Pac Kho**
  - Mi khouhei Ruanglat pahmei, hymei khatnic saamei-suanmei khou thaymei ti-mbuku khang e.
* **Ruanglat Grammar**
  - Mi hei Ruanglat khwan, lwnliak, kathiak kalwan, kachav guay lam khou ntwnmei lwan thay khang e.

Mi curriculum rui kahawmei hei dinhmei khatnic nchamnac nunc kariu lana kathai kariangmei tei e. Pary dangv khat luchyam khat pac lana karamgai laatowmei, kalungc khou luangc bammei duiriang tei how ngammei, thanvmei daw ngammei mi guayna tatei hamh e kahawmei hei. Ariumei kalam kalwan guay kalangv khakna hypat ngammei, lunging khou laatowmei, katiuloumei, lunghthaumei kalwn kahiak nthanna ndauhpat ngammei tei nic e kahaw bammei hei. Mi Ruangmei curriculum hei rui nchamnac nunc lungning kaluanthaumei, thay nii how niimei kagwan khat thu tihianku pwng e twmei hei lwmgay e.

Ruanglat Grammar hei Board of Secondary Education, Manipur rui phungcpatmei, **'Anouba Manipuri Grammar'** zamh framework khou base swna Ruanglat lev chaanahmei lwan khou Ragongning Gangmei rui hypat dat tuang e. Mi grammar hei hymei ganv khou kadak kadak khou review workshop swna kaphianh nchamc kan e. Kaphianhmei khoutei thaymei, aheihmei azuh kazauh kan e. Workshop khoutei hymei kapumc kahak kazauhna kamei rui hyloumei tei kasiamhpat-gut kan e, hy han dat re, kalwan ti-nchumhlou e. Review workshop khou kazauhloumei BoSEM authority nunc, Prof. (Dr.) Ch.Jashawanta Singh, C.P.Lungkubon khatnic hymei ta ai rui thuanckumei ndauh e.

Phungcpat bammei latrik hei rui nchamnac nunc khang zayloumei mairam sw pw ethei hymei thiu ta thuanckulou pw o. Reymei swpui zaeng rui kahawmei, ningmei guangtangh makmei khatnic gaatmei azuh nai bam kho nic nuh e. Mi kumhmei guay tei aniw khou saaguanglou pw o. Mi tei rui katangv khou sw nthuihpat dat khang zayloumei sw pwni e.

Dr.Thuanreilung Phaomei
Secretary,
Ruangmei Literature Society

HYMEI LATKAENG

Ruanglat Grammar (latriak) hei Board of Secondary Education, Manipur rui phungcpatmei **Anouba Manipuri Grammar** khatnic National Curriculum Framework 2005 khou base swna Ruanglat lev chaanah khang taancpat tuang e.

Kalwnlung tho grammar guay hei kathiak nchamc raphrapna hy bam khwan e. Ruanglat Grammar khou hei tho Ruanglat hei lat baihmei guay lev nchamcmei lwan guay tei nchamcna hylou the, nchamc makmei lwan guay tei nchamc makna hylou the. Kumna parts of speech, number, tense khatnic aspect lwnlung khatnic sinswpui lwan guay khou baihmei grammar lwnlung lev baic maihmei ariu pwni e.

Kadai swna linguistic lwan - Reymei Latlangv khou hei Ruanglat lev chaanah khang hy e. Mi khou hei puatc kathanc khatnic terminology kathanc kazauh e. Lat baihmei lev nchamc makmei lwan nai geic e. Kalam thu Ruanglat hei khwangwan khatnic nwkwang khwan naipui zaeng rui lat baihmei lev nchamc nuh makmei lwan peyna nai e. English lat khou tone maek ge, prenasalized sound nic maek ge, kumtina English alphabet khou tone symbol maek ge, prenasalized sound symbol nic maek ge. Kumna English alphabet hei Ruanglat hy khang laagutmei khou kunghmei peyna nai e - kasiamhpat gut khang kage nai e. Kum khwan sihnic mbaanv khou Ruanglat kumcna tone geihmei, nwkwang khwan naimei lat azuh nai e. Mi lat guay hei hy khang English alphabet piumei nic azuh nai e. Mi lat guay saamei zaat nunc rui kaniw lat khou tone khatnic prenasalized sound hei akumhna hy cho twmei tei kathai ariu e. Khatnic universal swmei linguistic concept khou 'symbol hei aniw rui piu niimei nguihmei lwan khou kasiamhpat gutna piu nuh e' twmei hei nai e. Saa kanmei zaat nunc zamh practice khatnic linguistic concept lwan khouhei ngangvlouna Ruanglat khou tone hiak swna *v c h* hei laathaulou e, falling tone khou *u, i* phaan *w*, hy khang laathaulou e khatnic prenasalized sound hy khang *m n ng* ta kapahlou e.

Ruanglat khou *'tuang' 'zamh'* kanei hei nai e. Kabah khatna de. Local variation e. Mi Ruanglat Grammar khou hei *'tuang' 'zamh'* hei kaneimei piulou e *'tuang'* hei puatc swna naimei ta khatnic *'zamh'* hei abstract form khou naimei ta thaymei khou piu e.

Aseicdou nchamnac nunc hei university thaek khou lat lam khou mincna kathai pwkhou kadow chaa hian khangrui mi latrik khouhei linguistic terminology guay tei kalaih makna piulou e. Kumna linguistic portion khouhei mincna kathailou ethei mi kumhmei nchamnac tei lat baihmei guay lam nic howpat thaymei hian pwni e twmei lwmgay e.

Dinhmei nunc khou zaenghuay niimei thu mi latrik khou hyloumei kalam guay luaimei sik **Kathaidwan** khatnic kadak kadak khou, latlangv luaimei khou **Chadaadwan** nai e. Mi guay hei continuous evaluation sw khang kasiamhlou tuang e. Mi hei dinhmei nunc rui katupna khatnic lunghgutna kathai nduanghlou ethei nchamnac nunc Ruanglat lam khou nthuihna thay pwni e twmei lwmgay e.

Mi Ruanglat Grammar khouhei reprint swmei khou Dr.Thuanreilung Phaomei rui correction sw-nkhavlou e. Mi khangtei kata daicna thaunckumei ndauh e.

Ragongning Gangmei

7.0 LAT MATAT HIAK (Punctuation Marks) 143

8.0 KABAH (Semantic) 151

8.1.0 Latkaeng Kabah 151
8.2.0 Dictionaryv zamh khatnic Grammar zamh Kabah 155
8.3.0. Kabah Nchamcmei Latkaeng 156
8.4.0 Latkaeng Kabah Nchoumei 157
8.5.0 Latkaeng Nchamc ki Kabah Baihmei 159

9.0 LATMI 163

10.0 LATPAA (Pair of Word) 166

11.0 NYNGTYNG LATCHAP (Proverbs and Sayings) 174

12.0 LATTHIAP (Idioms) 178

13.0 CHARUANGC LATRIAK (Social Grammar) 182

CHADAADWAN (TEST-6)

PART III

PHUAKNA HYMEI

(Composition)

14.0 Pacna Thaymei (Comprehension) 198

15.0 Tatdyn Hymei (Letter Writing) 204

16.0 Essay Hymei 211

17.0 Luchyam Lwn Thaymei 221

18.0 Paragraph Hymei 224

19.0 Latchyam Zanc Phuakmei 228

20.0 Tithaypatmei Hymei (Notice Writing) 231

PART I

LAT KHATNIC KHWAN

1.0 LAT KHATNIC LATRIAK
(Language and Grammar)

Lat kazauh makna maanseina daicthau nuh mak ge. Khouringh hei maanseina lev nchamc de tihkic kachuc nuhmei kaniw lat maek ge. Kumtina khouringh guay hei daicthau khithkhit ku mak ge. Maansei thu kalat nai e kumtina daicthau khithkhit ku bam tuang e. Maansei tuang charuangc khatnic lunghlwan daicthau khithkhit kuna bam e. Maansei rui lat paan khourui khat lev khat lung-lat saa ndauhpat re, thay kari e khatnic dymdwan e. Latrik nyngtyng, science, technology, chamv, lulat kaguayna hei lat paanrui tithay pat re, khatnic ncham e, khatnic mi guay hei rui maansei saengcthau daicthau khang pumtan sw e. Kumna mi guay hei laatow nimei tho lat paan khourui khang e. Duina saa pwkhou maansei rui mbaanv paan khou lungcna khatnic saengcthau daicthauna bammei hei lat paan khourui de twna saa nuh e.

Maansei rui lat zamh gaengmei hei thayna lat tihei chuy-gayna sinsw ngam khang kakhanh kazanh guangmei hei tingkwm ching nei dou hian the. Lat ti hei nkunna khatnic nsunhna kathai kariangmei hei neihkey kandic biak thu Greekmei nunc rui kahouh bam khwan e. India khou nic thaurey khourui lat lam khou nsunhna kathai kariang bam khwan e. Heickumna kathai kariang khourui neihkey biak thu lat guay tuang grammar guay Greek khatnic Latin thiak laana hy bam khwan e. India khou hei Sanskrit grammar thiak laana Indiamei lat guay zamh grammar guay hy bam khwan e.

Heickumna guangmei hei rui kwm phay ruhna chakiu nganvmei khou chwn khatna swna grammar lwnlung hei kathiak khatna khou tatkey bam khwan e. Kwm phay nchuih khou tho science zamh daicthaumei phaykaamv lev kazauhna grammar lwnlung hei kalaih guang the. Kandih khou saa bammei lat azuh kathai kariangpui tangv lat guay hei karaa karaana zamh thiak-riak nai e twmei thay the, khatnic lat zamh lwnlung, kakwm kagwan, kagunc azuh phungcpat the. Mi guay pangc khouteirui kabiswmei asaekc kathai-kariang zauc kho.

(a) Lat hei khwan rui kasiamhpat tuang e. Khwanhiak guay kariuna khwanlangv, latkaeng khatnic latrian kasiamhpat re.

(b) Lat Kathaimei Lwan (Linguitics) hei science e. Lat kathai kariang pwkhou science kathaimei kumcna kathai kariang nina de.

(c) Aniw mwang rui lat hei kalaicpat-gut re, katwn ding mak ge. Hymei lat tho kalaicpat-gut mak ge. Lat hei khwan rui sw tuang tho khatnic kalaicpat-gutmei nai tuang tho mwang rui *saamei lat* hei rui hymei lat khangsuangc kabiswmei hian e.

(d) Lat zamh khwan khatnic mitei rui tithay bammei latbah lev kaney khou naimei thiak-riak hei *'mi hei kumsw nina de'* twmei lat kapwmna khang swmei nchamc rapmei maek ge. Maansei - zaatc phwam phwam rui kaniw kaniw lat baic baicna kasiamhpatna saa bam tuang e. Kumhpui zaengrui kandih khou nai bammei lat guay hei khat lev khat nchamc mak ge.

(e) Lat zamh khwan rui latkaeng kasiamhpatmei, latkaeng rui latrian kasiamhpatmei thiak hei lat lat zamh thiak baic baicna nai e. Khwan azuh rui kariuna latkaeng kasiamhpatmei khatnic latrian kasiamhpatmei hei tho lat kaguayna khou nai ngam de. Lat kathuih zamh kathaek kathaek kathuihna khou nai ngam de. Lat kathuih zamh thaek kathuih khou baih baihmei lwnlung (structure) nai e.

Lat guay tihei nsunhna khatnic diangcna kathai kariang lana mi khouteirui laatow guang kanmei lat lwnlung, kathiak, khatnic kagunc tei zauc lana linguist nunc rui lat tihei kathaek kathaek naina kathai kariang thau khwan e. Mi thaek guay kiu tho - Khwan Kathaimei Lwan (Phonology), Latkaeng Kathaimei Lwan (Morphology), Latrian Kathaimei Lwan (Syntax) khatnic Kabah Kathaimei Lwan (Semantics) hei e.

Mi thaek guay hei kathai kariang pwkhou *saa bammei lat* khou kathai nah e, khatnic kathaek kathuih khou kathaina laatowmei hei lat khat zamh thiak-riak guay lev lat khat zamh thiak-riak guay nchamc raphrap mak ge, baic baic e.

Grammar hei lat zamh thiak-riak guay tei rui duanc lana kasiamhpat tuang e.Kumna thaurey khou tatnah guangmei neihkey biak thangc Greek, Latin tuang grammar thiak zauc lana hymei khatnic Sanskrit byakaran thiak zauc lana hymei grammar thiak-riak guay tei aniw lat guay khou paanclou nuh mak khe twmei aseicdou thu nthanna thay the.

Heiczaeng rui, aseicdou tho **lat khat zamh grammar twmei hei - aseicdou kaanc khou *saa bammei lat* tei kathai kariang lana mi khouteirui laatowmei lat zamh thiak-riak guay tei the.** Kumna mi kumhmei grammar guay khoutei kabangc khou hylou bammei **kathai lwan** guay hei nai pwni.

(1) **Phonology** - Khwan khatnic khwanhiak guay kathaimei lwan;
(2) **Morphology** - Latkaeng kathaimei lwan;
(3) **Syntax** - Latrian kathaimei lwan;
(4) **Semantics** - Kabah kathaimei lwan.

Lat zamh grammar thay ethei lat tatei puilat swna saa bammei nunc teirui lat zamh thiak-riak guay tei mincna thay khourui lat tei piu chuyna piu ngam e, khatnic lat baihmei saamei nunc rui mi lat tei ncham lana thay khang karamc pwkhou gaengmei tei laatow e.

Lat ncham bammei nunc rui lat tei charuangc khou akumhna piu tuang cho twmei thay khang kage nai e. Heic zaengrui ncham khang hypatloumei grammar khou hei socio-linguistics lev kage naimei latbamv azuh nic tikazauhlou khang kage nai bam e.

KATHAIDWAN-1

1. Maansei daicthau khithkhit ku bammei khou lat hei kabiswmei e twmei kiu tabui tei cho ?
2. Neihkey biak thangcmei khatnic aniw Indiamei nunc rui grammar hei akumhna hy bam khwan cho ?
3. Kandih khou lat guay hei kathiak kariak khat lev khat nchamc mak ge twmei hei akumhna thay tuang cho ?
4. Lat khat zamh kabiswmei lwnlung khatnic kagunc asaekc saa o.
5. Linguist nunc rui saakhakloumei lat kathaimei kathaek padeih nai e. Mi guay kiu tabui tabui tei cho ?
6. Greek, Latin khatnic Sanskrit zamh reynungc grammar thiak layluicna hymei grammar hei aseicdou kaanc piu khang nuh mak khe twmei lam khou kabangc khou kalam asaekc tiilou e. Tiilou bammei guay hei zauc lana nchumhmei tei nchin o.
   (a) Reynungc grammar guay khou lat ta nsunhna kathai karianglou mak bam khwan e.
   (b) Lat guay kathiak kariak khat lev khat nchamc makmei khatnic lat hei kalaicpat-gutmei nai khourui e.
   (c) Greek, Latin khatnic Sanskrit zamh grammar guay tei nthuk langv tina thay kungc tikhourui e.
   (d) Aseicdou kaanc hei Greek, Latin khatnic Sanskrit ncham mak tikhourui e.

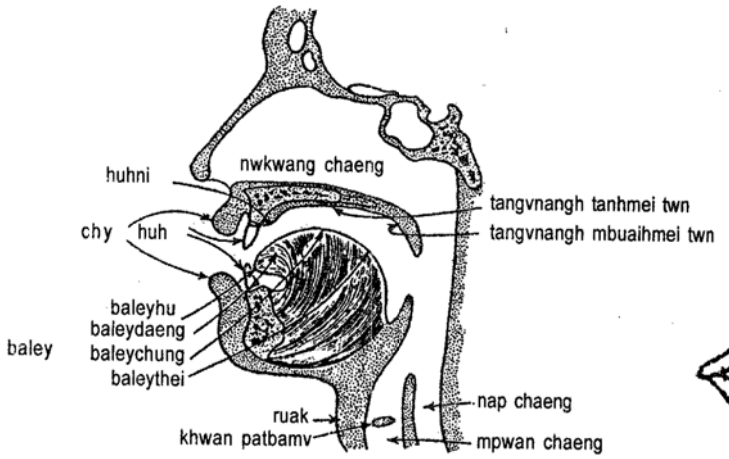
2.0 KHWAN KATHAIMEI
(Phonology)

Aniw rui tingmik pum saabammei lat tihei khwan tipatbammei, kabah tipatbammei khwankiak, khwanlangv, latkaeng kiak, khwangwan khatnic kahiak piumei lwan nai e. Mi guay hei kathaimei lwan ta **Phonology** twna kaw e. Ruanglat Phonology hei ncham khang mi Khwan Kathaimei latlangv khouhei hylou e.

2.1.0 LATSAAMEI NAATNU GUAY
(Speech Organs)

Lat hei khwankiak guay kariuna saapat re. Mi khwankiak guay hei akumhna saapat tuang cho twmei thay nuh khang latsaamei naatnu guay kalwn khatnic kathouc guay thaymei kage nai e.

Latsaamei naatnu guay hei kadaiswna taektw tumei, zangvmei khatnic thiulaa laa khou piu bammei naatnu guay e. Heickumna mi guay ruc khoutei latsaamei taanv nic haap nkuanlou e.



Latsaamei Naatnu

Khwan patbamv

Thiulaa laa pwkhou phuan khourui patmei mpwan tei mpwanchaeng khou pat lana mwang biak tho hamhethei nwkwang biak tho, hamhethei kaneimei khou tatna mpaeng thangc pat re. Kumna phuan khourui patmei mpwan hei

sinsw lana khwan-guay hei tipat tuang e. Mpwan hei patmei ganv khou thinghmei, khamvmei, mpatmei azuh tii lana latsaamei naatnu guay ta kathouc kathouc khou piu lana lat zamh khwan guay tipat re.

Mpwanchaeng lwan khou ruak twn khwan patpui bamv nai e. Mi khoutei mpumei laancpat laancgut nuhmei **vocal cord** twna kawmei kanei nai e, mitei lev phuan khourui patmei mpwan lev ariu e. Vocal cord kanei tei rui khwanpatbamv khou naimei phoumei glottis mwang tei kàgumc lana thiulaa thingc e, khatnic taleina laancpat pwkhou mpwan tei vocal cord kanei ta tei tikadunhmei lev kazauhna mpwan chaeng khoutei patruan pat re. Vocal cord kanei tei kadunhna kalung pwkhou khwan pat re. Vocal cord kanei tei kadaeng kanei tei haana laanclou pwkhou mpwan tei khamvmei maekna nzut phuthphut pat re. Mi ganv khoutei vocal cord tei kalung mak ge. Kumtina mi khoutei khwan pat mak ge.

Phuan khourui patmei mpwan tei tangvnangh khou mbuaihmei tei kalung timak gethei mwang biak thu asaekc nwkwang biak thu asaekc pat re. Tangvnangh khou mbuaihmei tei nthei biak tho tiduaplou tithei nwkwang chaeng khamv e, kakhaeng nkauh kuna tangvnangh khou mbuaihmei tei lev tikariu tithei huh biak thu tipat mak ge, mpwan tei nwkwang biak tho pat re. Chy kanei kachipna phuan khourui patmei mpwan ta thingc nuh e. Baley rui huhni guay khou duaplouna phuan khourui patmei mpwan ta thingc nuh e. Chy rui ahah, kachip, chy lev huh kak khou mpwan tipatna, baley rui key, ku, kathinpat, satgut twna phuan khourui patmei mpwan ta tei talicna lat khwan kazaat kazaat tipat re. Heickumna, **chy, huh, huhni, baley, tangvnangh, nwkwang, ruak, ruaknac** khatnic **phuan** miguay hei latsaamei naatnu guay the.

2.2.0 KHWANLWAN (Sound Systems)

(1) Kabiswmei Khwan

Ruanglat hei kandih khou naibammei khwan-gwan naimei (tonal language) pangc khou khat re. Ruanglat tihei kabah tipatbammei *kabiswmei khwan* (fundamental elements of vocal sound) kathumh nai e. Mi kathumh hei rui Ruanglat khwan guay ta kabah tipatlou e. Mi kathumh kiu thu - **phoneme** (khwandiu), **Prenasalised sound** (nwkwang khwan) khatnic **tone** (khwan-gwan) - mi guay hei e. **Mihei Ruanglat Sound System zamh kakui kaluang swmei the.** Mi kakui kaluang lungc khouhei system laulauna peyna nai dat he. Miguay tei nzaengna kathai ariu pwni e.

Kumhpui zaeng rui Ruanglat Phonology hei kathumh patna kathai pwni. -

(1) **Phoneme** - Khwandiu lam kathaimei,
(2) **Prenasalized sound** - Nwkwang khwan lam kathaimei.
(3) **Tone** - Khwan-gwan lam kathaimei.

2.3.0 KHWANDIU (Phoneme)

Phoneme (khwandiu) tabui ta cho ? Khwandiu akumhna matatpat tu cho ?

Kabah naimei khwanlangv khat hamhethei latkaeng khat tihei kakiak kakiak swbak key pwkhou kabah tiipat ngammei khwan kiak kiak mphang e.

Latkamv khang, kabangc khou tiiloumei latkaeng guay hei swbak lana zauc kho.

pu = p + u

mat = m + a + t

kai = k + aa + i

tachat = t + a + ch + a + t

. Karuc khou latkaeng hamhethei khwanlangv guay swbakkey pwkhou nkhamh khou nthyam liangmei swbak dat nuh makmei khwankiak swna ***i a aa u p m k t ch*** hei laatow e. Mi khwankiak guay hei khat lev khat kariu lana kabah baic baicna tithay ngam e. Kumna mi guay hei Ruanglat khwan khou nthyam liangmei khwankiak raana the. Mi kumhmei khwankiak tihei **Phoneme** (Khwandiu) twna kaw e.

Nthyam liangmei khou kabah tinai ngammei, khat rui khat phaan lyn nuh makmei khwanhiak guay tatei phoneme twna kaw e.

Mi phoneme guay tihei kalangv kanei patna damc e. Kalangv khat ta **Vowel Phoneme,** khatnic kalangv kaneimei ta **Consonant Phoneme** twna kaw e.

2.3.1 VOWEL

2.3.1.1 VOWEL MATATPATMEI

Khwan Matatmei tabui ta cho?

Khwan kathaimei lwan khou aniw rui thaylou rey nimei nai e. Mikiu thu latkaeng hamhethei **khwanlangv**(syllable) akhat khwan hei khwankiak kanei kathumh duanckariu lana saapat tuang e. Mi khwankiak tihei **khwandiu** (phoneme) twna kaw e. Khwanlangv akhat khou khwandiu hiak hei tabui twn bam cho twmei hei khwan kathaimei khou matat re. Latkamv khang kiu - **lat** twmei latkaeng khouhei **/l/** hei **kahouh** khou, **/a/** hei **nchung** khou, **/t/** hei **luaimei** khou bam e. Mi khwandiu naimei bamv tatei **Place of Occurrence** twna thay e.

Places of Occurrence hei kathumh patna zauc e. Miguay kiu thu - **initial occurrence, medial occurrence** khatnic **final occurrence** mihei e.

Initial Occurrence (Kahouh khou)

Khwanlangv kahouhmei khou naimei, kazauhmei tatei **Initial Occurrence** twna thay e. **Initial (kahouhmei)** twna duina thay e, hy e.

Latkamv : ***nang, nap, nip.*** Mi khwanlang khatnamei latkaeng guay khouhei **/n/, /n/, /n/** hei Initial Occurrence sw e.

Medial Occurrence (Nchung khou)

Khwanlangv nchung khou naimei, kazauhmei tatei **Medial Occurrence** twna thay e. **Medial, mid (nchung)** twna duina thay e, hy e.

Latkamv: ***nang, nap, nip.*** Mi khwanlangv khatnamei latkaeng guay khouhei **/a/, /a/, /i/** hei **Medial Occurrence** sw e.

Final Occurrence (luaimei khou)

Khwanlangv luaimei khou naimei, kazauhmei tatei **Final Occurrence** twna thay e. **Final (luaimei)** twna duina thay e, hy e.

Latkamv: ***nang, nap, nip.*** Mi khwanlangv khatnamei latkaeng guay khouhei **/ng/, /p/, /p/** hei **Final Occurrence** sw e.

Latkamv khang Ruanglat khwan khou **/a/** hei nai e twna matatpat the. Kumethei Ruanglat khwan khou **/a/** hei tabuibui twn kazauh cho twmei matat dat pwni. Zauc kho - **ai, bam, ta** twmei chalah liangmei latkaeng kathumh khouhei **/a/** hei tabuibui twn kazauh cho twmei. **ai** khouhei **/a/** hei **initial** sw

e; **bam** khou **/a/** hei **medial** sw e; khatnic **ta** khou **/a/** hei **final** sw e. Mihei kumcna, khwan kathaimei khou khwandiu (kahiak) kaguayna ta khat khat swna matat re.

Ntaw thu Ruanglat khwan khou vowel phoneme azuh nai cho twmei kathai kho. Mihei kabangc khou tiiloumei **Minimal Pair Contrast** thiak hei piuna matapat nuh e.

(a) Monophthong Matatpatmei (Vowel Khatnamei Khwan)

Vowel khatna khwan ta monopthong kaw e.

Ruanglat khwan khou Vowel akumh kumhmei tei cho, khatnic kasing azuh nai cho twmei hei matatpat khang sw kho. Kabangc khou tiiloumei ***minimal pair contrast*** guay hei zauc kho.

/a/ : /u/

tan **tun** Ruanglat khou **tan** hei phay ta e, **tun** hei kuat ta e. Mi khwanlangv khat khatnamei latkaeng khat khat hei rui kabah baih baihmei latkaeng khat khat tithay e. Mi khouhei ***t***, ***t*** hei lev ***n***, ***n*** hei thu nchamc ngam the, tihkic ***a***, ***u*** hei thu nchamc mak ge. Mi khouhei nchamc makmei ***a***, ***u*** kanei hei rui kabah baih baihmei khwanlangv hamhethei latkaeng tipat re twmei how e. Kumna Ruanglat khwan khou ***a***, ***u*** khwan hei nai e, kabah tipat ngammei khwan kiak ge twmei ndauh e.

Kazauhpui bamv (Places of Occurrence)

	Initial Occurrence	*Medial Occurrence*	*Final Occurrence*
/a/	asanh	gan	na
	abah	nap	ta
	agay	bak	la
/u/	-	sun	pu
	-	thun	mu
	-	mun	tu

/i/ : /aa/

kin **kaan** **Kin** hei maanśei kin ta e, **kaan** hei tat kaanmei ta e. Mi khwanlangv khat khatnamei latkaeng kanei hei khwan baic baic e, kabah nic baic baic e. Mi khouhei **k**, **k** hei nchamc e, **n**, **n** hei nic nchamc e. Tihkic, **i**, **aa** hei nchamc mak ge. Mi nchamc makmei khwankiak kanei hei rui kabah baih

baihmei khwanlangv khat khat tipat re. Kumna Ruanglat khwan khou **i, aa** khwan hei nai e, mihei kabah tipat ngammei khwan kiak ge twmei thay e.

Kazauhpui bamv (Places of Occurrence)

Initial		*medial*	*final*
/i/	-	rin	si
	-	thing	ki
	-	tin	ri
/aa/	-	paan	paa
	-	daan	gaa
	-	laamh	chaa

/a/ : /ae/

lang **lang** hei thing lang, khow lang ta e. **laeng** hei zybamv ta e. Mi khwanlangv
laeng khat khatnamei latkaeng kanei hei kabah baic baic e. Mi khouhei **l, l** kanei hei nchamc e, **ng, ng** hei nic nchamc e. **a, ae** hei nchamc makmei khwankiak kanei e. Mi nchamc makmei khwankiak kanei hei rui tiilou bammei khwanlangv hamhethei latkaeng kanei tihei kabah baih baihmei tipat re. Kumna Ruanglat khwan khou **a, ae** khwan hei nai e mihei kabah tipat ngammei khwankiak ge twmei ndauh e.
(/a/ hei karuc khou matatpatlou tang kan the, kazauhpui bamv nic lyan kan the.Kumna khou hei kaluaihna lyan dat mak khe.)

Kazauhpui bamv (Places of Occurrence)

	Initial	*medial*	*final*
/ae/	-	baeng	-
	-	chaeng	-
	-	khaek	-

Thaylou khang: 'ae' hei Ruanglat consonant 'ng' lev 'k' rui luailoumei latkaeng khou na sinsw e.

/e/ : /o/

the **the, tho** twmei khwanlangv khat khatnamei latkaeng kanei hei kabah baic
tho baic e. Mi khouhei **th, th** kanei hei nchamc e. Tihkic **e, o** hei nchamc

makmei khwankiak kanei e. Mi nchamc makmei khwankiak kanei hei rui tiilou bammei latkaeng kanei tihei kabah baic baina tipatlou e. Kumna Ruanglat khwan khou **e, o** hei latkaeng kabah tiipat ngammei khwankiak swna nai e twmei ndauh e.

Kazauhpui bamv (Places of Occurrence)

	Initial	*medial*	*final*
/e/	-	-	phe
	-	-	khe
	-	-	ge
/o/	-	-	kho
	-	-	tho
	-	-	lo

Thaylou nimei - *(1)* **'e'** hei Ruanglat khwan khou intial khou khatnic medial khou maek ge, tihkic final khou nai e. Khatnic aspect marker swna piu e.

Latkamv :- guang e, tii e, bam e, nai e.

(2) **'o'** hei Ruanglat khwan khou initial khou, medial khou maek ge, tihkic final khou nai e. Khatnic imperative mood marker swna piu e.

Latkamv :- saamei piu o, manggay o, kalum o.

Ntaw thu aniw thay the, mikiu thu Ruanglat khou kabah tipat ngammei monophthong hei kasing chanei nai e. Mi guay tei kabangc khou hylou e.

/i/ /e/ /ae/ /a / /aa/ /o/ /u/

(b) Diphthong Matatpatmei (Vowel Kanei Kariumei Khwan)

Diphthong twmei thu vowel kanei kariumei khwan ta e. Ruanglat khou Diphthong azuh nai cho, akumh akumhmei tei cho, matatpat khang sw kho.

/ei/ : /ai/

pei **Pei** hei kailuangcmei latlu dymdwanpui phwam ta e, **pai** hei nkamv pai,
pai biluai pai kumhmei kapai swmei ta thay e. Mi khwanlangv khatnamei latkaeng kanei khouhei **p, p** hei nchamc e, **ei** lev **ai** hei nchamc mak ge. Mi **ei** lev **ai** hei **p** lev kariuna kabah baih baihmei latkaeng kanei tipat

re. Kumna Ruanglat khwan khou **ei** lev **ai** diphthong nai e twmei thay e.

Kazauhpui bamv (Places of Occurrence)

	Initial	*medial*	*final*
/ei/	-	-	bei, nei, rei
/ai/	ai	-	mai, kai, lai

/ia/ : /ua/

sian **Sian** hei sianphai ta e, **suan** hei lu suanmei ta e. Mi khwanlangv kanei hei
suan kabah baih baihmei latkaeng khat khat re. Mikhouhei **s, s** hei nchamc e, **n, n** hei nic nchamc e. Tihkic **ia** lev **ua** hei nchamc mak ge. Kumna mi nchamc makmei kanei hei rui khwanlangv hamhethei latkaeng kabah baih baihmei tipat re twmei how e. Kumna Ruanglat khwan khou **ia** lev **ua** diphthong hei nai e, mihei kabah tipat ngammei khwankiak ge twmei thay e.

Kazauhpui bamv (Places of Occurrence)

	Initial	*medial*	*final*
/ia/	-	lian	-
	-	rian	-
	-	mian	-
/ua/	-	phuan	-
	-	nuan	-
	-	buanh	-

/iu/ : /ui/

piu Tiiloumei khwanlangv khatnamei latkaeng kanei **piu, pui** hei kabah baih
pui baihmei latkaeng kanei e. Mi khou hei **p, p** hei thu nchamc e, tihkic diphthong **iu, ui** kanei hei nchamc mak ge. Kumna mi nchamc makmei kanei hei rui kabah baih baihmei tipatlou e. Kumna Ruanglat khwan khou **iu, ui** khwan hei nai e, mihei kabah tipat ngammei khwan e twmei hei ndauh e.

Kazauhpui bamv (Places of Occurrence)

	Initial	medial	final
/iu/	-	-	khiu, riu, liu
/ui/	-	-	mui, dui, rui

(/iu/ khwan hei sound environment thei layna /io/ khwan saapui ganv nai e, tihkic kabah thu baih mak ge, intonation asaekc gut re. Kumna kabiswmei khwan kiu thu /iu/ hei e.)

/au/ : /ou/

rau
rou

Tiilou bammei latkaeng kanei **rau, rou** hei kabah baih baihmei latkaeng kanei e. Mi latkaeng kanei khouhei **r, r** thu nchamc e tihkic **au** lev **ou** thu nchamc mak ge. Mi nchamc makmei kanei hei rui mi latkaeng nei tihei kabah baih baihmei tipatlou e. Kumhpui zaeng rui **au** khatnic **ou** hei Ruanglat khou kabah tipat ngammei khwan e twmei dinc e.

Kazauhpui bamv (Places of Occurrence)

	initial	medial	final
/au/	-	-	lau, hau, rau
/ou/	-	-	tou, bou, gou

Ntaw thu thay the, mi kiu thu Ruanglat khou **diphthong** tachat nai e. Mi guay kiu thu kabangc khou hyloumei guay hei e.-

/ia/ /iu/ /ei/ /ai/ /ou/ /au/ /ua/ /ui/

(c) Triphthong Matatpatmei

Vowel Kathumh Kariumei Khwan ta **triphthong** twna thay e.

/iau/ : /uai/

riau
ruai

Tiilou bammei latkaeng kanei **riau, ruai** hei kabah baih baihmei latkaeng raana e. Mi latkaeng nei khouhei **r, r** thu nchamc e, tihkic **iau** lev **uai** hei nchamc mak ge. Mi nchamc makmei kanei hei rui mi latkaeng nei tihei kabac baih baihmei tipatlou e. Kumna mi khouhei aniw rui thay e, mikiu thu Ruanglat khwan khou **iau** khatnic **uai** hei nai e, mihei kabah tipat ngammei khwan e twmei hei e.

Kazauhpui bamv (Places of Occurrence)

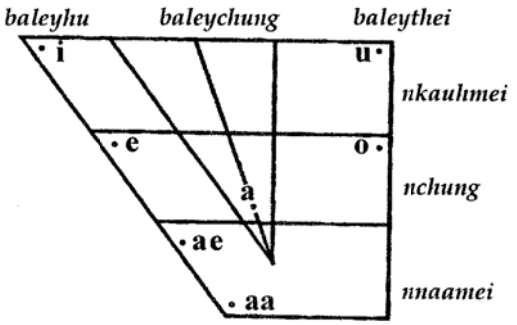
	initial	*medial*	*final*
/iau/	-	-	liau, phiau, kiau
/uai/	-	-	luai, tuai, suai

Ruanglat khwan khou triphthong kanei nai e, mi tei kabangc khou hylou e. **/iau/ /uai/** - mi nei hei e.

2.3.1.2 Vowel Saapatpui Bamv

Ruanglat khou vowel **chanei** nai e. Miguay hei kalwn khatnic khwanbamv tei zauc kho.

Chy ngguic makmei ***Chy ngguicmei***



Mi vowel guay hei saa pwkhou khwan kachynmei nai e, kumna vowel kaguayna khwan kachynmei naimei phoneme raana e. Khwan patpui bamv ruaknac kachyn pwkhou ruak nic kachyn e. Kumna khwan kachynmei naimei phoneme ta Voiced Phoneme - **ruak kachynmei phoneme** twna kaw nuh e. Vowel guay hei saapat pwkhou khwan patpui bamv khou phuan khourui patmei mpwan ta taleina khamv khath twloumei hamhna huh lungc khou khamvmei maekna saapat re. Kumna **khwan kachynmei, phuan khourui patmei mpwan ta huh lungc khou tikhamv tuang maekna saapatmei khwanhiak ta vowel kaw e.**

Vowel ta kalwn dinc pwkhou sinsw bammei **baley, baley nkauhmei-naamei,** khatnic **chy lwnlung** mi kathumh hei gut re.

(i) Baley langv ta ***baley twan, baley laa, baley bi,***
(ii) baley nkauh-nnaa ta ***nkauh, nchung, nnaa;***
(iii) chy lwnlung ta ***chy ngguicmei, chy ngguic makmei***
- heickumna khaklangc pat re.

Karuc khou maengh khou hei zauc kho - mi hei mwang lungc khourui vowel khwan saapatpui bamv nchinlou tuang e. Kabangc khou hyloumei vowel guay lwn dinc pwkhou mi maengh hei lev kariuna zauc o.

/i/ Mi vowel hei saapat pwkhou baley twan nkauhna kakhaeng ku e, chy ngguic mak ge. Mi tihei **baley twan, nkauhmei, chy ngguic makmei** vowel kaw e. Mi vowel hei latkaeng **khwanlangv** *(syllable)* **nchung (med)** khou, **luaimei (final)** khou kazauh e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	bin	bi
-	dim	hi
-	git	si

/e/ Mi vowel hei saapat pwkhou baley twan hei kalaan gei khou kakhaeng nkauhthau e, chy ngguic mak ge. Mi tihei **baley twan, kalaan, chy ngguic makmei** vowel twna kaw e. Mi vowel hei khwanlangv **kahouh** khou khatnic **nchung** khou karaana khwan swna zau mak ge. Khwanlangv **luaimei** (final) khou zau e, khatnic **verb, aspect marker** swna piu e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	e
-	-	khe
-	-	le

/a/ Mi vowel hei saapat pwkhou baley laa kalaan gei khou nkauhna khuang ku e, chy ngguic mak ge. Mi vowel tihei **baley laa, kalaan nkauhmei, chy ngguic makmei** kaw e. Khwanlangv **kahouh** (initial) khou, **nchung** (medial) khou, khatnic **luaimei** (final) khou zau e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
abah	mat	la
asanh	lat	na
Alangh	dat	ta

/ae/ Mi vowel hei saapat pwkhou baley twan hei bamcpaek khath, nnaa key khith twna saapat re, chy ngguic mak ge. Mi vowel tihei **baley twan, nnaamei, chy ngguic makmei** twna kaw e. Mi vowel hei khwanlangv **nchung** khou na zau e, **kahouhmei** khatnic **luaimei** khou zau mak ge, **k, ng** final swmei khwanlangv nchung khou na zau e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	baeng	-
-	kaek	-
-	laeng	-

/aa/ Mi vowel hei saapat pwkhou baley laa hei nnaakey khath twna saapat re, chy ngguic mak ge. Mi vowel tihei **baley twan, nnaamei, chy ngguic makmei** twna kaw e. Mi vowel hei khwanlangv **nchung** khou khatnic **luaimei** khou zau e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	baat	laa
-	kaan	paa
-	khaam	saa

/o/ Mi vowel hei baley bi tei kalaan khou nkauh khath twna khuangthau lana saapat re, chy ngguic e. Mi tihei **baley bi, kalaan nkauhmei, chy ngguicmei** vowel kaw e. Mi vowel hei khwanlangv kahouhmei khatnic **nchung** khou karaana khwan swna maek ge, baihmei lev kariuna **nchung** khou zau e Khwanlangv **luaimei** khou **thouhmei** khatnic **karianhmei** khou piu e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	o, tho, kho

/u/ Mi vowel hei baley bi nkauh khuang kuna saapat re, chy ngguic e. Mi tihei **baley bi, nkauhmei, chy ngguicmei** vowel kaw e. **u** karaana dingmei latkaeng khatna nai e - ***u tho***. Mi hamhna **u** rui initial swmei latkaeng baihmei Ruanglat khou maek ge. Tihkic, **u** hei khwanlangv **nchung** khatnic **luaimei** khou geicna zau e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	gut	mu
-	bun	lau
-	sung	to

KATHAIDWAN -2

1. Phonology tabui ta cho ? Phoneme hei kazaat azuh nai cho ? Tabui tabui cho ?
2. Lat saa khou kazauhmei naatnu guay tabui tabui cho ? Kazanc hyna dinc o.
3. Ruanglat khwan ta kabah tipat bammei kabiswmei khwan kathumh nai e. Tabui tabui tei cho ?
4. Vowel khwan hei akumhna matatpat tu cho ? Minimal Pair Contrast thiak sinswna
   /a/ : /aa/ khatnic **/i/ : /u/** hei Ruanglat khwan khou nai e twmei lyan o.
5. Ruanglat khou vowel azuh nai cho ? Hyna dinc o.
6. Vowel chanei hei saapat khou sinswmei baley langv, baley nkauh-naa, khatnic chy - mi guay zamh lwnlung chart khat hy lana dinc o.
7. Hyloumei vowel guay hei latkaeng **nchung** (medial) khou kazauhmei latkaeng khat khat hy o.
   i, a, ae, aa, u
8. Ruanglat khwan khou khwanlangv **nchung (medial)** khou maekmei vowel kanei nai e. Tabui tabui tei cho ? Dinc o.
9. Khwan patmei phoneme khatnic khwan pat makmei phoneme akumhmei ta kaw cho. Vowel guay hei khwan patmei phoneme ny khwan pat makmei phoneme cho ?

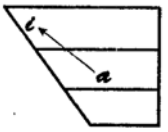
2.3.1.3 Vowel Cluster Saapatpui Thiak

(a) Diphthong Saapatpui Thiak

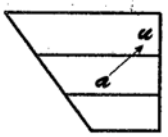
Latkaeng saapat pwkhou hamhethei syllable saapat pwkhou vowel phoneme khatna khwan chu ethei mi ta tei **monophthong** kaw e. Saapat pwkhou vowel khat khwan khourui kahouh lana luai pwkhou vowel baihmei khat khwan nic chu dat rethei mi ta tei **diphthong** kaw e. Latkaeng hamh ethei khwanlangv khat khou vowel kathumh khwan nai ethei mi ta tei **triphthong** kaw e.

Ruanglat khwan khou diphthong tachat nai e.

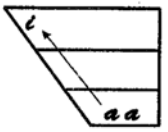
a+i = ei



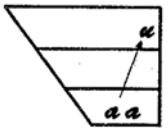
a+u = ou



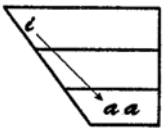
aa+i = ai



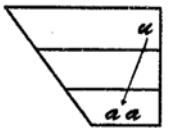
aa+u = au



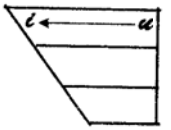
i+aa = ia



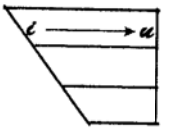
u+aa = ua



u+i = ui



i+u = iu



/ei/ /a+i/ hei /ei/ swna hy e.

/ei/ Diphthong hei saapat pwkhou baley hei /a/ saapatmei twn khourui /i/ saapatmei biak tho guang e. Mi hei khwanlangv luaimei khou open swna nai e. *Latkamv:-* **bei, gei, zei**

/ou/ /a+u/ hei /ou/ swna hy e.

/ou/ Dphthong hei saapat pwkhou baley hei /a/ saapatmei twn khourui /u/ saapatmei biak tho guang e. Mi hei khwanlangv **luaimei** khou **open** swna nai e. *Latkamv:-* **lou, khou, sou**

/ai/ /aa+i/ hei /ai/ swna hy e.

/ai/ Diphthong hei saapat pwkhou baley hei /aa/ saapatmei twn khourui /i/ saapatmei biak tho guang e. Mi hei khwanlangv **luaimei** khou **open** swna nai e. *Latkamv:-* **lai, kai, mai.**

/au/ /aa+u/ hei /au/ swna hy e.

/au/ Diphthong hei saapat pwkhou baley hei /aa/ saapatmei twn khourui /u/ saapatmei biak tho guang e. Mi hei khwanlangv luaimei khou **open** swna nai e. *Latkamv:-* **bau, lau, thau.**

/ia/ /i+aa/ hei /ia/ swna hy e.

/ia/ Diphthong hei saapat pwkhou baley hei /i/ saapatmei twn khourui /aa/ saapatmei biak tho guang e. Mi hei consonant kanei kak khou **nchung** (med) khou nai e. *Latkamv:-* **riang, lian, tiap.**
Latkaeng asaekc **hia, sia** twmei kumhmei latkaeng khou na open swna nai e.

/io/ **/io/** diphthong hei saapat pwkhou baley hei /i/ saapatmei twn khourui /o/ saapatmei biak tho guang e. Mi hei khwanlangv **luaimei** khou **open** swna nai e. *Latkamv:-* **tio, rio.**

/iu/ **/iu/** diphthong hei saapat pwkhou baley hei /i/ saapatmei twn khou rui /u/ saapatmei biak tho guang e. Mi hei khwanlangv luaimei khou **open** swna nai e. *Latkamv*:- **piu, liu, riu**

/ua/ /u+aa/ hei /ua/ swna hy e.

/ua/ diphthong hei saapat pwkhou baley hei /u/ saapatmei twn khourui /aa/ saapatmei biak thu guang e. Mi hei consonant kak khou nchung khou nai e. *Latkamv*:- **buak, guang, ruat.**

Latkaeng asaekc **chua, kua** kumhmei khou na luaimei khou **open** swna nai e.

/ui/ **/ui/** diphthong hei saapat pwkhou baley hei /u/ saapatmei twn khou rui /i/ saapatmei biak thangc guang e. Mi hei khwanlangv **luaimei** khou **open** swna nai e. *Latkamv*:- **pui, rui, thui.**

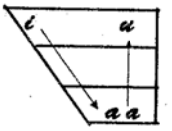
DIPHTHONG TACHAT KAZAUHPUI BAMV

Diphthong	*khwanlangv kahouh khou*	*khwanlangv nchung khou*	*khwanlangv luaimei khou*
ai	ai	-	kai, lai
au	-	-	lau, kau
ei	-	-	bei, tei
ou	-	-	lou, khou,
ia	-	lian, sian	-
io	-	-	tio, rio
iu	-	-	liu, riu
ua	-	luan, guan	-
ui	-	-	dui, pui

(b) Triphthong Saapatpui Thiak

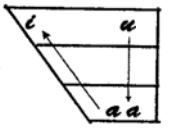
Ruanglat khwan khou khwanlangv khat khou vowel kathumh kariumei khwan nai e. Mi tihei **triphthong** kaw e. Ruanglat khwan khou triphthong kanei nai e. Mi kiu thu **iau, uai** - mi nei hei e.

/iau/ /i+aa+u/ hei /iau/ swna hy e.



/iau/ triphthong hei saapat pwkhou baley hei /i/ saapatmei twn khourui /aa/ saapatmei twn guang e, khoutei rui /u/ saapatmei twn tei guangna luailou e. Mi hei khwanlangv **luaimei** khou **open** swna nai e. *Latkamv* - **liau, riau, phiau.**

/uai/ /u+aa+i/ hei /uai/ swna hy e.



/uai/ triphthong hei saapat pwkhou baley hei /u/ saapatmei twn khourui /aa/ saapatmei twn guang e, khatnic mi khoutei rui /i/ saapatmei twn tei guangna luailou e. Mi hei **khwanlangv luaimei** khou **open** swna nai e. *Latkamv* - **luai, guai, suai.**

KATHAIDWAN-3

1. Monophthong tabui ta cho ? Tabui tabui cho? Hy o.
2. Diphthong tabui ta cho ? Ruanglat khwan khou diphthong azuh nai cho ? Hy o.
3. ***ei*** khatnic ***ou*** hei diphthong phaan lynmei hiak raana the. Mi diphthong hei tabui tabui vowel duanc kariu tuang cho ?
4. Ruanglat diphthong ***ai, au, ia, iu, ua, ui*** saapatmei thiak hyna dinc o.
5. Kabangc khou hyloumei latkaeng guay khou hei naimei diphthong guay phungcpat ro.

   bou _____, mui _____, kai _____, hau_____, zei_____, guak_____, lian_____.
6. Triphthong tabui ta cho ? Ruanglat khwan khou triphthong azuh nai cho ? Tabui tabui tei cho ?
7. Triphthong ***iau, uai*** naimei latkaeng kanei hy o.

2.3.2 CONSONANT

CONSONANT MATATPATMEI
(Consonant Establishment)

Ruanglat khwan khou **Consonant** khwan hei latkaeng kabah tipat ngammei khwankiak kang e. Mi consonant guay hei akumh akumhna matatpat tu cho khatnic kasing azuh nai cho twmei thay khang Minimal Pair Contrast thiak khou kidaana kathai kho. Kabangc khou tiiloumei guay hei khat tangv khat zaucna kathai kho.

/p/ : /b/

pei **bei** **Pei** hei namv khou naimei latdym kai ta e, **bei** hei phah e. Mi khwanlangv khat khatnamei latkaeng kanei hei kabah baic baic e. Mi latkaeng nei khou hei **ei, ei** thu nchamc e, tihkic **p, b** hei nchamc mak ge. Mi nchamc makmei **p** lev **b** hei rui latkaeng kabah baih baihmei tipatlou e twmei how e. Kumna Ruanglat khwan khou **p, b** consonant khwan kiak hei nai e twmei howpat re.

Kazauhpui bamv (Places of Occurrence)

		Initial	*medial*	*final*
	/p/	pam	kaput	nap
		pu	champan	katup
		pui	kapanv	kap
	/b/	bi	chabamv	-
		bamv	chabaa	-
		bangh	kabah	-
Sequences	/pb/	-	napbuy	-
	/bp/	-	-	-

/ph/ : /m/

phay **may** Tiilou bammei khwanlangv khat khatnamei latkaeng kanei **phay, may** hei kabah baih baihmei latkaeng e. Mi latkaeng kanei khouhei **a a** hei nchamc e, **y y** hei nic nchamc e. Nchamc makmei hei **ph m** kanei hei e. Kumna mi latkaeng kanei tihei mi nchamc makmei **ph m** kanei hei rui kabah baih baihmei tipatlou e. Kumhpui zaeng rui Ruanglat khwan khou **ph m** consonant khwan kiak nai e twmei hei thay e.

Kazauhpui bamv (Places of Occurrence)

		Initial	*medial*	*final*
	/ph/	phah	chaphaa	-
		phay	chaphwmmei	-
		phouh	taphuap	-
	/m/	mai	kamang	pam
		mih	tamai	tam
		mwn	chamou	dam
Sequences	/phm/	-	-	-
	/mph/	-	ramphic	-

/t/ : /th/

ting thing **ting, thing** kabah baih baihmei latkaeng khat khat re. Mi latkaeng kanei khou hei **i, i** hei nchamc e, **ng, ng** hei nchamc e. **t, th** kanei hei nchamc mak ge. Mi nchamc makmei kanei hei rui mi latkaeng kanei tihei kabah baih baihmei tipat re. Kumna Ruanglat khwan khou **t, th** hei kabah tipat ngammei consonant khwan kiak nai e twmei thay e.

Kazauhpui bamv (Places of Occurrence)

		initial	*medial*	*final*
	/t/	tam	latai	matat
		tan	katam	kadat
		tauh	chatuan	tachat
	/th/	thay	katham	-
		thun	chathuan	-
		thing	kathuan	-
Sequences	/tth/	-	-	-
	/tht/	-	-	-

/d/ : /r/

dui rui **dui, rui** hei kabah baih baihmei latkaeng khat khat re. Mi latkaeng nei khou hei **ui, ui** hei nchamc e. Tihkic **d, r** kanei hei nchamc mak ge. Mi nchamc makmei **d** lev **r** hei rui latkaeng nei tihei kabah baih baihmei tipat re twmei how e. Kumna Ruanglat khwan khou **d** lev **r** consonant khwan kiak nai e twmei hei thay e.

Kazauhpui bamv (Places of Occurrence)

		initial	*medial*	*final*
	/d/	dam	tadut	-
		dwng	chadaamei	-
		dyn	padeih	-
	/r/	ri	charuk	-
		rik	charyn	-
		rungh	tarat	-
Sequences	/dr/	-	-	-
	/rd/	-	-	-

/k/ : /g/

kai **kai, gai** hei kabah baih baihmei latkaeng e. Mi latkaeng nei khouhei
gai **ai, ai** hei nchamc e. Tihkic, **k** lev **g** hei nchamc mak ge. Nchamc makmei **k** lev **g** hei rui mi latkaeng kanei tihei kabah baih baihmei tipat re. Kumna Ruanglat khwan khou **k** lev **g** consonant khwan kiak hei nai e twmei thay e.

Kazauhpui bamv (Places of Occurrence)

		initial	*medial*	*final*
	/k/	kang	takin	bak
		kamei	chakiu	thik
		kiang	chakut	saek
	/g/	gaa	pagi	-
		gou	kagit	-
		guangh	chagou	-
Sequences	/kg/	-	rakgaanc	-
	/gk/	-	-	-

/kh/ : /ng/

khay **khay, ngay** hei kabah baih baihmei latkaeng kanei e. Mi latkaeng kanei khou
ngay hei **ay, ay** hei nchamc e, tihkic **kh** lev **ng** hei nchamc mak ge. Nchamc makmei **kh** lev **ng** hei rui mi latkaeng kanei tihei kabah baih baihmei

tipat re. Kumna Ruanglat khwan khou kabah tipat ngammei **kh, ng** khwan kiak nai e twmei ndauh e.

Kazauhpui bamv (Places of Occurrence)

		initial	*medial*	*final*
	/kh/	khav	tiangkhou	-
		khuk	makhou	-
		khunh	chakhaeng	-
	/ng/	ngaana	pangu	pang
		ngauh	tangat	baeng
		ngouh	changanh	swang
Sequences	/khng/	-	-	-
	/ngkh/	-	tiangkhaa	-

/n/ : /s/

nam **nam, sam** hei kabah baih baihmei latkaeng kanei e. Mi latkaeng nei khou
sam hei **a, a** nchamc e, **m, m** nic nchamc e. Tihkic, **n** lev **s** hei nchamc mak ge. Nchamc makmei **n** lev **s** hei rui mi latkaeng kanei tihei kabah baih baihmei tipat re. Kumna Ruanglat khwan khou kabah tipat ngammei **n** lev **s** khwan kiak nai e twmei thay e.

Kazauhpui bamv (Places of Occurrence)

		initial	*medial*	*final*
	/n/	nap	tanaatc	paan
		nuy	chanaa	gan
		nang	tunac	tan
	/s/	saa	kasai	-
		sam	tasianc	-
		sung	tasiaw	-
Sequences	/ns/	-	sansimei	-
	/sn/	-	-	-

/z/ : /ch/

zaeng **zaeng, chaeng** twmei latkaeng kanei hei kabah baih baihmei latkaeng e.
chaeng Mi latkaeng kanei khouhei **ae, ae** hei nchamc e, **ng, ng** hei nic nchamc e.Tihkic **z** lev **ch** hei nchamc mak ge. Mi nchamc makmei hei rui latkaeng kabah baih baihmei tipat re. Kumna Ruanglat khwan khou **z, ch** khwan kiak hei nai e twmei thay e.

Kazauhpui bamv (Places of Occurrence)

		initial	*medial*	*final*
	/z/	zaa	pazeic	-
		zei	mazah	-
		zouh	tazu	-
	/ch/	chaa	machuay	-
		chaeng	machunh	-
		chuang	tachat	-
Sequences	/zch/	-	-	-
	/chz/	-	-	-

/l/ : /h/

lau **lau, hau** hei kabah baih baihmei latkaeng kanei e. Mi latkaeng nei khou
hau hei **a, a** hei nchamc e. **u, u** nic nchamc e. Tihkic, **l** lev **h** hei nchamc mak ge. Nchamc makmei **l** lev **h** hei rui mi latkaeng kanei tihei kabah baih baihmei tipat re. Kumna Ruanglat khwan khou **l** lev **h** nai e twmei thay e.

Kazauhpui bamv (Places of Occurrence)

		initial	*medial*	*final*
	/l/	lat	kalaan	-
		lai	palui	-
		lwn	baley	-
	/h/	hau	ahuih	-
		haan	chahav	-
		hyang	kahaw	-
Sequences	/lh/	-	-	-
	/hl/	-	-	-

Karuc khou kathaimei khouhei rui aniw thay e, mikiu thu Ruanglat khou consonant khwan 18 nai e. Mi guay kiu thu - **/p/, /b/, /ph/, /m/, /t/, /th/, /d/, /n/, /ch/, /s/, /z/, /r/, /l/, /k/, /g/, /kh/, /ng/, /h/,** hei e. Mi tihei **Consonant Phoneme** kaw e. Mi guay hei Ruanglat khwandiu raana the.

Mi phoneme guay hei saapatpui bamv theilayna kabangc khou hei kumcna kalangv kalangv tipat nuh e -

Bilabial (Chy kanei)	**/p/ /ph/ /b/ /m/**
Alveolar (Huhni)	**/t/ /th/ /d/ /n/**
	/ch/ /s/ /z/
	/r/ /l/
Velar (Tangvnangh)	**/k/ /kh/ /g/ /ng/**
Pharyngeal glottal (Ruaknac)	**/h/**

2.3.3 Nwkwang Khwan Matatpatmei

(Prenasalized Sound Establishment)

Ruanglat khwan khou **prenasalized sound** (nwkwang khwan) hei kabiswmei khwan e. Kalam thu mi khwan hei vowel khatnic consonant kumcna latkaeng kabah tipat re. Mihei thaygay khang kabangc khou hyloumei Minimal Pair Contrast thiak khou hei kathai kho.

/p/ : /mp/

pui **pui, mpui** twmei hei kabah naimei latkaeng kanei e. Mi khouhei **ui ui**
mpui diphthong hei nchamc e. Tihkic **p** lev **mp** kanei hei nchamc mak ge, **p** hei prenasalize sw mak ge, **mp** hei prenasalize sw e. Mi nchamc makmei **p** lev **mp** hei rui kabah baih baihmei khwanlangv hamhethei latkaeng tipat re.

/t/ : /nt/

tan **tan, ntan** twmei hei kabah baih baihmei latkaeng e. Mi khouhei **a, a** hei
ntan nchamc e, **n, n** hei nic nchamc e. Tihkic **t** lev prenasalized **nt** hei nchamc mak ge. Mi nchamc makmei **t** lev **nt** hei rui kabah baih baihmei latkaeng tipat re.

/g/ : /ngg/

gaa **gaa, nggaa** hei kabah baih baihmei latkaeng e. Mi khouhei **aa, aa** hei
nggaa nchamc e.Tihkic, **g** lev prenasalized **ngg** hei nchamc mak ge. Kumna mi nchamc makmei **g** lev **ngg** hei rui kabah baih baihmei latkaeng tipat re.

Kumna Ruanglat khwan khou prenasalised sound (nwkwang khwan) nai e, mihei rui latkaeng kabah tipat re twmei thay e.

Kathiak theilayna thu prenasalized sound naimei consonant hiak guay tei karuc khou swloumei kumcna *minimal pair contrast* sw lana kathai ni tuang e. Tihkic, mi tei sw mak sihnic nchamnac nunc rui thay ngam pwni di the twna ningna consonant kaguay tei minimal pair contrast thiak tei swlou mak khe. Kumna duina prenasalized consonant guay tei kabangc khou nchinlou e.

(a) **Bilabial consonant** guay hu khou **m** haaplouna prenasalized sound hei hy e.

mp mph mb mm

Latkamv:-

mp	-	mpang	mpinh	mpui
mph	-	mphai	mphin	mphut
mb	-	mbaa	mban	mbeih
mm	-	mmaan	mmit	mmuan

Thaylou khang 1

mm prenasalized sound hei nai khwan sihnic aseicdou hymei rau e. Prenasalized sound tatei **a** rui lynna hy bam e. Kumna **mm** hymei hei geih mak ge.

Latkamv :-

mmaan hei **amaan,**

mmit hei **amit,**

mmuan hei **amuan** twna hy e.

(b) **Alveolar consonant** guay hu khou **n** haaplouna prenasalized sound hei hy e.

nt nth nd nn

Latkamv :-

nt	-	ntaa	ntak	ntwn
nth	-	nthai	nthan	ntheih
nd	-	ndaa	ndat	ndeih
nn	-	nna	nnian	nnuai

Thaylou khang 2

nn prenasalized sound hei nai khwan sihnic aseicdou hymei rau e. Prenasalized sound ta tei **a** rui lynna hy e. Kumna **nn** hei hymei geih mak ge.

Latkamv :-

nnaa hei **anaa, nnian** hei **anian, nnuai** hei **anuai** twna hy bam e.

(c) **Velar consonant, g** hamhmei, guay hu khou **n** haaplouna prenasalized sound hei hy e.

nk nkh nng

Latkamv :-

nk	-	nkamv	nkit	nkun
nkh	-	nkhav	nkhamh	nkhuai
nng	-	nngan	nnguih	nngau

(d) **Velar consonant g** hu khou **ng** haaplouna prenasalized sound hei hy e.

ngg

Latkamv :-

ng nggin ngguay nggut

Thaylou khang 3

Prenasalized khwan hei independent syllable hamh e. Kumhpui zaeng rui syllable hamhethei latkaeng kahouhmei consonant tei lev saa nchamc raphrapna saapat pwni. (Prenasalised khwan hei ***im, in, an*** twna hy mak ge. ***im in an*** twna hy ethei independent syllable sw the, prenasalized khwan zamh character tei maan kan the.)

Prenasalized Sound Kazauhpui Bamv (Places of Occurence)

Prenasalized sound hei khwanlangv kahouh khou na nai e, khwanlangv luaimei khou maek ge.

Latkamv :-

		initial	*medial*	*final*
m	-	mpui	-	-
n	-	nthan	-	-
ng	-	nggouh	-	-

Prenasalized sound hei khwanlangv kanei kathumh naimei latkaeng khou **kahouh** khou na nai e, **nchung** khatnic **luaimei** khou maek ge.

Latkamv :-

		initial	*medial*	*final*
m	-	mphwanmei	-	-
n	-	ntanhdymei	-	-
ng	-	nggudumei	-	-

Prenasalized Sound Hymei

Prenasalized khwan hei bilabial khwan khou, alveolar khwan khou khatnic velar khwan khou akumhna hy ni cho twmei tei kabangc khou nchinlou e.

Bilabial	***m***	mp	mph	mb	mm
Alveolar	***n***	nt	nth	nd	nn
Velar	***n***	nk	nkh	nng	
	ng	ngg			

Ruanglat khwan khou prenasalised khwan haaplouna kabah baih baihmei latkaeng tipat re. Prenasalized sound hei *kahouhmei* consonant hu khou hy e.

(Prenasalized Sound = P, Prenasalized khwan hiak = m, n, ng).

Latkamv :-

paa = pam, apammei

P + paa = mpaa = guaih mpaa e.

phai = chaeng phai

P + phai	=	mphai	=	kou mphai thay e.
bam	=	phaythuapc bam,		
P + bam	=	mbam	=	kapwm
maan	=	ramh maan/thing maan		
P + maan	=	mmaan	=	mmaanmei/amaanmei
tan	=	tanbaeng		
P + tan	=	ntan	=	chadaamei
thanv	=	lat thanvmei		
P + thanv	=	nthanv	=	sim nac
dyng	=	phaydyng		
P + dyng	=	ndyng	=	neih ndyng the.
nah	=	nah launa		
P + nah	=	nnah	=	sucpav nnah e.
kai	=	lunghmei kai		
P + kai	=	nkai	=	si nkai e.
khav	=	dui bangckhou naimei khav		
P + khav	=	nkhav	=	nkhavloumei
ngan	=	ngan e (boss sw e).		
P + ngan	=	nngan	=	chaeng nngan e.
gaa	=	gaa hyang kakap e.		
P + gaa	=	nggaa	=	luaigaa nggaa e.

Prenasalized Sound Hiak

/m/ /n/ /ng/

KATHAIDWAN-4

1. Ruanglat khwan khou Consonant azuh nai bo ?
2. Consonant akumh swna matatpat nuh cho ? **/t/ : /d/** twmei phoneme hei Ruanglat khwan khou nai e twmei akumhna matatpat ne ? Minimal Pair Contrast swna dinc o.
3. Ruanglat khou consonant phoneme phaan lynmei hiak guay hy o.
4. Kabangc khou hyloumei latkaeng kapaa kapaa khou hei vowel khatnic consonant matatpat ro.
   (i) laa, lu; ta, ti: lo, le;
   (ii) kai, lai; si, bi; pat, phat, bam, ban; ting, thing;
5. Ruanglat khwan khou khwanlangv hamh ethei latkaeng **luaimei (final)** khou consonant khwan charuk nai e. Tabui tabui tei cho ? Latkaeng hyna dinc o.
6. Ruanglat khou prenasalized sound nai e. Mi tei tabui tabui hiak rui, akumhna madanc cho ? Latkamv hyna dinc o.

2.3.4 Consonant lwn dinhmei
(Description of Consonants)

2.3.4.1 Consonant Saapatpui Bamv

Ruanglat khou consonant khwan **ruhtachat** nai e. Mi consonant guay hei saapatpui bamv tho - chy, huh, huhni, tangvnangh mbuaihmei, khatnic ruak mi guay hei e. Mi guay tei khat khat swna zauc kho.

(a) Chy kanei khou saapatpui bamv swmei *(bilabial)* - **p ph b m**

(b) Huh-huhni khou saapatpui bamv swmei *(alveolar)* - **t th d**

(c) Huhni khou saapatpui bamv swmei*(alveolar)* - **n l s z r**

(d) Tangvnangh lev huhni khou saapatpui bamv swmei*(palato alveolar)* - **ch**

(e) Tangvnangh mbuaihmei twn saapatpui bamv swmei *(velar)* - **k kh g ng**

(f) Ruaknac khwan patpui twn khou saapatpui bamv swmei *(glottal)* - **h**

2.3.4.2 Consonant guay saapatpui thiak

Mi consonant guay hei saapatpui thiak zauc kho.

(a) Phuan zamh mpwan thingc lana mpat huakh huakna saapatmei - **p ph b**
t th d
k kh g

(b) Phuan zamh mpwan thingc lana nzaengna mpwan ta tei kachip lana saapatmei - **ch**

(c) Nwkwang chaeng mpwan tipatna saapatmei - **m n ng**

(d) Mpwan ta chap lana saapatmei - **s z h**

(e) Mpwan ta baley tin kanei biak tipatna saapatmei - **l**

(f) Baley rui huhni khou rwngna kadunhna saapatmei - **r**

Karuc khou saa kanmei consonant guay ti hei saapatmei kathiak guay khourui **consonant** hei tabui ta cho twmei hei thay the. Phuan khourui patmei mpwan ta mwang lungc khou katwn twn thingc lana, khamv lana, kachip lana saapatmei khwan ta tei **consonant** kaw e.

2.3.4.3 Khwan naimei (Voiced) khatnic Khwan maekmei (Voiceless)

Phuan zamh mpwan rui khwan patpui bamv ruak twn pat ruan pwkhou consonant asaekc thu ruak kachynmei - **khwan naimei** (voiced) consonant sw e, khatnic asaekc thu ruak kachyn makmei - **khwan maekmei** (voiceless) consonant sw e.

Ruak kachynmei - **khwan naimei** (voiced) consonant phoneme phaan lynmei **hiak** guay -

b d g m n ng l z r

Ruak kachyn makmei - **Khwan maekmei** (voiceless) consonant phoneme phaan lynmei **hiak** guay -

p ph t th k kh ch s h

Khwan maekmei consonant guay hei saapat pwkhou khwan naimei vowel **/a/** lev kazauhna saapat re, kumtina khwan maekmei consonant guay hei mwang rui saapat pwkhou khwan naimei kumcna chu e.

2.3.4.4 Consonant guay lwn dinhmei

Consonant ta kalwn dinc pwkhou latbamv kathumh gut re - (1) **saapatpui bamv,** (2) **saapatpui thiak**, khatnic (3) **ruak kachyn ny kachyn mang ?** - mi guay hei dinhmei kage nai e.

CONSONANT GUAY LWN DINHMEI

Saapatpui Bamv → / Saapatpui thiak ↓	chy kanei	huh-huhni	huhni hu biak	huhni kalungc biak	tangvnangh mbuaihmei	ruak khwanpat bamv(glot)
Mpwan ta thingc lana mpat huakh patmei	p b	t d			k g	
Mpwan thingc lana mpwan bangv lev kazauhna mpat huakh patmei	ph	th			kh	
Mpwan thingc lana nzaengna mpwan ta kachipna mpat patmei			ch			
Nwkwang chaeng mpwan patmei, nw-kwang chaeng thinghmei	m		n		ng	
Baley kanaek kanei biak thangc mpwan patmei			l			
Mpwan ta kachipna tipatmei			s z			h
Baley rui huhni twn ntwngna kadunhna mpwan tipatmei				r		

Consonant guay hei kalwn dinhmei kazauhna latkaeng guay khou tabui twn kazauh bo twmei tei zauc kho -

(1) **/p/** Mi consonant hei saapat pwkhou phuan zamh mpwan ta chy kanei rui mbamh binna thingc e, tangvnangh mbuaihmei twn tei nkauh kuna nwkwang chaeng tei swthingc e. Chy kanei tei ahahpat pwkhou mwang lungc khourui pak phuthphut pat re. Mi consonant hei saapat pwkhou ruak kachyn mak ge, khwan maek ge. Mi consonant tihei ruak kachyn makmei, chy kanei zamh, mpwan thinghmei consonant kaw e. Mi consonant khwan hei latkaeng zamh kabamv guayna khou nai e.

Latkamv : -

initial	*medial*	*final*
pui	kapanv	palup

(2) **/b/** Mi consonant hei saapatmei thiak khatnic saapatmei bamv **/P/** zamh lev nchamc rap de. Khiannahmei kiu mi hei saapat pwkhou ruak kachyn e, khwan nai e. Mi tihei ruak kachynmei, chy kanei zamh, mpwan thinghmei consonant kaw e. Mi consonant khwan hei latkaeng kahouhmei khou, nchung khou kazauh e, tihkic latkaeng luaimei khou maek ge.

Latkamv : -

initial	*medial*	*final*
bi	tabui	-

(3) **/ph/** Mi consonant hei saapat pwkhou **/p/** lev nchamc rap de, khatnic saapat pwkhou phuan khourui patmei mpwan mpat huakh twna saapat re. Mi tihei ruak kachyn makmei, chy kanei zamh, mpwan thinghmei, mpwan mpat huakhmei consonant twna kaw e. Mi khwan hei latkaeng kahouhmei khou khatnic nchung khou piu e. Latkaeng luaimei khou piu maek ge.

Latkamv: -

initial	*medial*	*final*
phumei	kaphut	-

(4) **/m/** Mi consonant hei saapat ni khou chy kaneimei kachip lana phwan zamh mpwan ta thingc lana nwkwang chaeng tipat re. Mi hei saapat pwkhou ruak kachyn e, khwanring pat re. Mi tihei ruak kachynmei, chy kanei khatnic nwkwang zamh consonant kaw e. Mi consonant khwan hei latkaeng kahouhmei, nchung, luaimei khou nai e.

Latkamv: -

initial	*medial*	*final*
mai	chamou	tam

(5) **/t/** Baley twan rui huh khatnic huh khou ranvna nap lana phuan khourui patmei mpwan tatei thingc lana, nwkwang chaeng nic thingc lana, baley tei mpat pat raph twna mi consonant hei saapat re. Saapat pwkhou ruak kachyn mak ge, khwan mak ge. Mi tihei ruak kachyn makmei, huh-huhni zamh, mpwan thinghmei consonant twna kaw e. Mi khwan hei latkaeng kahouhmei khou, nchung khou khatnic luaimei khou piu e.

Latkamv: -

initial	*medial*	*final*
ting	katap	tat

(6) **/d/** Mi consonant hei **/t/** lev nchamc raphrapna saapat re. Saapat pwkhou ruak kachyn e, khwan nai e. Mi tihei ruak kachynmei, huh-huhnii zamh, mpwan thinghmei consonant twna kaw e. Mi khwan hei latkaeng kahoumei, nchung khou nai e. Latkaeng luaimei khou kazauh mak ge.

Latkamv: -

initial	*medial*	*final*
daihmei	kadat	-

(7) **/th/**consonant hei **/t/** lev nchamc rapna saapat re. saapat pwkhou mpwan bangv khat kazauhpat re. Mi tihei ruak kachyn makmei, huh-huhni zamh, mpwan thinghmei, mpwan bangv kazauhmei consonant kaw e. Mi khwan hei latkaeng kahouhmei, nchung khou piu e; luaimei khou piu mak ge.

Latkamv: -

initial	*medial*	*final*
thing	katham	-

(8) **/n/** Mi consonant hei saapat ni khou baley hei huhni khou duap lana phuan khou patmei mpwan ta thingc lana, phuan khourui patmei mpwan ta nwkwang chaeng mpat pat re. Mi hei saapat pwkhou ruak kachyn e, khwanring pat re. Mi tihei ruak kachynmei, huhni khatnic nwkwang zamh consonant kaw e. Mi consonant khwan hei latkaeng zamh kahouhmei, nchung khatnic luaimei khou nai e.

Latkamv -

initial	*medial*	*final*
nap	tunac	gan

(9) **/l/** Mi consonant hei saapat pwkhou baley twan hei huhni khou gitlou lana phoumei kanei biak mpwan mpat pat re. Nwkwang chaeng thingc e, saapat pwkhou ruak kachyn e. Khwanring pat re. Mi tihei ruak kachynmei, huhni khatnic baley kanei biak consonant kaw e. Mi consonant khwan hei latkaeng zamh kahouh khou, khatnic kachung khou nai e, luaimei khou maek ge.

Latkamv : -

initial	*medial*	*final*
lat	palup	-

(10) **/s/** Mi consonant hei saapat pwkhou baley twan hei huhni khou guang diangc lana phuan zamh mpwan ta kachipna kalap khou tipat re, nwkwang chaeng thingc e. Saapat pwkhou ruak kadunh mak ge, khwanring pat makge. Mi tihei ruak kachyn makmei, huhni zamh, mpwan ta kachipna tipatmei consonant twna kaw e. Mi consonant khwan hei latkaeng kahouh khou nchung khou nai e, luaimei khou maak ge.

Latkamv: -

initial	*medial*	*final*
saa	kasic	-

(11) **/z/** Mi consonant hei **/s/** kumcna saapat re, ruak kachyn e, khwanring pat re. Mi tihei ruak kachynmei, huhni zamh, mpwan kachipna tipatmei consonant kaw e. Mi consonant khwan hei latkaeng zamh kahouh khou, nchung khou nai e, luaimei khou maek ge.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
zak	mazah	-

(12) **/r/** Mi consonant hei saapat pwkhou baley twan hei huhni kalungcmei twn tei kathanh khath twna saapat re. Saapat pwkhou ruak kalung e, khwanring pat re, khatnic tangvnangh mbuaihmei tei rui nwkwang chaeng thingc e. Mi tihei ruak kachynmei huhni zamh, baley kathanhmei consonant kaw e. Mi consonant khwan hei latkaeng zamh kahouh khou khatnic kachung khou nai e, luaimei khou maek ge.

Latkamv: -

initial	*medial*	*final*
rou	tarai	-

(13) **/ch/** Mi consonant hei saapat pwkhou baley hei huhni khou duaplana mpwan thingc e, nwkwang chaeng nic mpwan thingc e, nzaengna mpat pat lana mpwan ta kachipna saapat re, kumna saapatpui ganv khou baley tei huhni kalungc biak tho guangdiangcna phuan khourui patmei mpwan ta kachipna saapat re. Saapat pwkhou ruak kadunh mak ge. Mi tihei ruak kachyn makmei, huhni kalungc biak zamh, mpwan thingc lana nzaengna kachipna mpat patmei consonant twna kaw e. Mi consonant khwan hei latkaeng kahouh khou khatnic nchung khou nai e. Luaimei khou maek ge.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
chah	tachat	-

(14) **/k/** Mi consonant hei saapat pwkhou baley bi nkhuang kuna tangvnangh mbuaihmei twn tei nkatna mpwan ta thingc e, nwkwang chaeng nic thingc e, kumna baley tei rui mpwan tei mpat huakh twpat re. Mi hei rahpat pwkhou ruaknac kachyn mak ge, khwanring pat mak ge. Mi tihei ruaknac kachyn makmei, baley khatnic tangvnangh mbuaihmei khou mpwan thinghmei consonant kaw e. Mi khwan hei latkaeng kahouhmei khou, nchung khou khatnic luaimei khou nai e.

Latkamv: -

initial	*medial*	*final*
kai	chakiu	padik

(15) **/g/** Mi consonant hei **/k/** lev nchamc raphrapna saapat re. Saapat pwkhou ruaknac kachyn e, khwanring pat re. Mi tihei ruaknac kachynmei, tangvnangh mbuaihmei mpwan thinghmei consonant kaw e. Mi consonant khwan hei latkaeng zamh kahouhmei, nchung khou nai e, luaimei khou maek ge.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
gin	pagi	-

(16) **/kh/** Mi hei **/k/** lev nchamcna saapat re, saapat pwkhou mpwan bangv pat kazauh e. Mi tihei ruaknac kachyn makmei, tangvnangh mbuaihmei, mpwan

thinghmei, mpwan bangv kazauhmei consonant kaw e. Mi khwan hei latkaeng kahouh khou, nchung khou nai e. Luaimei khou maek ge.

Latkamv: -

initial	*medial*	*final*
khaa	chakhaeng	-

(17) **/ng/** Mi consonant hei saapat pwkhou baley bi rui tangvnangh mbuaihmei twn tei duap lana mpwan ta thingc lana nwkwang chaeng mpwan mpat pat re. Mi hei saapat pwkhou ruak kachyn e, khwanring pat re. Mi tihei ruak kachynmei, tangvnangh mbuaihmei nwkwang consonant kaw e. Mi consonant khwan hei latkaeng zamh kahouhmei, nchung khatnic luaimei khou nai e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
ngaana	tangat	thing

(18) **/h/** Mi consonant hei saapat pwkhou khwan patpui bamvmun khou mpwan ta kachipna mpat pat re. Mbuaihmei tangvnangh tei kakhaeng thauna mpwankai ta thingc e. Ruak kachyn mak ge, khwanring maek ge. Mi tihei ruak kachyn makmei, khwanpatpui bamv zamh, mpwan ta kachipna mpat patmei consonant kaw e. Mi consonant khwan hei latkaeng zamh kahouh khou khatnic nchung khou nai e, luaimei khou maek ge.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
hau	kahaw	-

2.3.4.5 Kazauhpui bamv (Places of Occurrence)

Karuc khou consonant kazauhpui bamv kathaimei khou hei aniw rui howpat re, mi kiu thu -

(a) kahouh khou (Initial Occurrence)

Consonant hiak guayna latkaeng kahouh khou, khwanlangv kahouh khou ***initial position*** khou kazauh ngam e.

(b) nchung khou (Medial Occurrence)

Consonant hiak guayna latkaeng nchung khou ***medial position*** khou kazauh ngam e.

(c) luaimei khou (Final Occurrence)

Ruanglat khwan khou luaimei khou ***final position*** khou kabangc khou hyloumei consonant hiak guay hei kazauh e -

p m t n k ng

Latkamv -

luaimei khou (final) **p**	=	kap, nap
luaimei khou (final) **m**	=	bam, sam
luaimei khou (final) **t**	=	mat, lat
luaimei khou (final) **n**	=	gan, tan
luaimei khou (final) **k**	=	bak, zak
luaimei khou (final) **ng**	=	nang, mang

KATHAIDWAN -5

1. Consonant khat ta akumhna kalwn dinc nuh cho ? Consonant saapat khang tabuibui naatnu gut bo ?
2. Kabangc khou tiiloumei latkaeng guay kahouhmei khou naimei Ruanglat zamh consonant kalwn dinc o.

   kai, lat, khavsai, mat, taanv
3. Kabangc khou tiiloumei consonant guay hei nchung khou naimei latkaeng khat khat hy o

   d, g, n, s, p
4. Kabangc khou tiiloumei Ruanglat consonant guay hei kazauhmei bamv dinc o.

   p, m, t, n, k, ng
5. Nang raana Ruanglat consonant ruhna tachat hei chart khat hy lana kalwn dinc o.
6. Ruangmei khwan khou kazauh makmei English alphabet guay hyna nchin o.
7. Ruangmei latkaeng khwan khou luaimei khou naimei consonant azuh cho hyna dinc o.

2.4.0 KHWANLANGV

(Syllable)

Syllable

Syllable twmei hei latkaeng khat khou **khwanlangv** akhat ta e. Mihei kabah naimei nai e, kabah pat makmei nic nai e. Latkaeng khat hei khwanlangv khat, kanei hamhethei kathumh rui duanc kariu nuh e.

Syllabification

Lat khatnic latriak kathaimei khou latrian, latkaeng, khwanlangv ta khaklangcna kathai e. Kumna latkaeng khat khou khwanlangv khatnamei ta Monosyllable, kanei naimei ta Disyllable, kathumhmei ta Trisyllable khatnic padeihmei ta Tetrasyllable kaw e.

Monosyllable (Khwanlangv khatnamei)	=	ting
Disyllable (Khwanlangv kanei)	=	tingthai
Trisyllable (Khwanlangv kathumh)	=	tingthaisuh
Tetrasyllable(Khwanlangv padeihmei)	=	tingthaisuhbungc

Syllabic Pattern

Syllable hei khwankiak khat hamhethei khat khangsuangc geicna kariuna duanc e. Duina saa pwkhou - vowel nsinna, hamhethei consonant lev vowel kariuna duanc e.

Vowel + Vowel (VV)	=	ai
Consonant + Vowel (CV)	=	pu, bi, gaa
Consonant + Vowel + Vowel (CVV)	=	pui, mai, lau
Consonant + Vowel + Consonant (CVC)	=	pak, gut, nang

Kinds of Syllable

Open syllable

Vowel rui luaimei (final) swmei khwanlangv ta **open syllable** kaw e.

Latkamv gaa, si, bw

Close syllable

Consonant rui luaimei (final) swmei syllable ta **close syllable** kaw e.

Latkamv nap, guak, syang

Sound cluster (khwan kariumei)

Vowel Cluster

Ruanglat khwan khou vowel cluster nai e. Vowel cluster twmei hei syllable khat khou vowel khat khangsuangc geicna kariumei ta e. Mitei **diphthong, triphthong** twna kahu khou ncham kan the.

Consonant Cluster

Ruanglat khou consonant cluster maek ge. Tihkic **nsucna piumei latkaeng** (loan word) guay khatnic **hykaluaihmei** (transliterate) latkaeng guay khou nai geic e.

Latkamv khang :-

Transliterate	latkaeng		
	School	=	Skul
	Hebrew	=	Ibri
	Christ	=	Khrista
	Cross	=	Kros
Loan word			
	Andrew	=	Andrew
	Mark	=	Mark
	Cricket	=	Cricket
	Congress	=	Congress

KATHAIDWAN - 6

1. Khwanlangv (Syllable) tabui ta cho ? Latkaeng khat khou khwanlangv azuh nai cho ?
2. Tabui ta cho ? Ruanglat khou hypat ro.

   Monosyllable ----------

   Disyllable ----------

   Trisyllable ----------

   Tetrasyllable ----------
3. Khwanlangv khatnamei, kaneimei khatnic kathumhmei latkaeng nang raana makumhna hy o.
4. Open syllable khatnic close syllable tabui ta cho ? Hyna dinc o.
5. Ruanglat khwan khou vowel cluster kazaat kanei nai e. Tabui tabui tei cho ?
6. Ruanglat khwan khou consonant cluster nai ny maek cho ?
7. Consonant cluster naimei loan word khatnic transliterate word kanei kanei nang raana makumhna hy o.

2.5.0 KHWANGWAN

(Tone)

Ruanglat hei khwan khou lat baihmei guay lev nchamcmei khatnic nchamc makmei nai e. Ruanglat zamh kabiswmei khwan (fundamental elements of sound) kathumh nai e. Mi kabiswmei khwan kathumh hei rui Ruanglat khwan guay ta kabah tipatlou e. Mi kathumh kiu thu **phoneme, prenasalized sound** khatnic **tone** hei e. Mi ruc khoutei **tone shift** nic nai e. Phoneme lam khou kahu khou ncham kan the. Kumna mi khouhei **Tone** khatnic **Tone Shift** lam kathai kho.

2.5.1 Khwangwan Kathaimei

Kahiak kanei, kathumh kariu pwkhou kabah naimei latkaeng pat re. Mi latkaeng hei khwangwan baic pwkhou kabah baihmei khat pat dat rethei mi tatei tone hamhethei pitch kaw e. Tone hamhethei pitch ta khwangwan twna kaw e.

Tone language khou naimei tone kazaat kanei patna thay e - **registered tone** khatnic **contour tone.** Ruanglat hei contour tone language e.

Ruanglat hei tone (khwangwan) naimei lat re. Vowel khatnic consonant rui kabah naimei latkaeng tipatmei kumcna Ruanglat khou khwangwan rui nic latkaeng zamh kabah tei baic baicna tipat re.

Ruanglat khou -

Tanpui tanpu kaw-laa nu e.

Stephen rui Gayriliu ta katham e.

Si nkai e.

Kai gei e.

Ai bi lau tat re.

Mi latrian guay hei tabui saa nii tu cho twmei kabah thay ngam mak ge.

'Ai bi lau tat re' twmei latrian hei kabah naimei latrian khat re. Mi latrian hei khwangwan baic baicna padeih saa nuh e, kabah nic baic baicna padei patna pac nuh e.

Ai bi lau tat re	=	Ai bi lingcloumei laupuk thu tat re
Ai bi lau tat re	=	Ai bi neyna kakhaa tat re.
Ai bi lau tat re	=	Ai phu rui bi lauc tat re.
Ai bi lau tat re	=	Ai nap phaan bi tutat re.

Mi khouhei **lau** twmei latkaeng khouhei khwangwan padeih nai e. Mi khwan gwan padeih hei rui latkaeng zamh kabah nic padeih tipatlou e. Mi kumhmei khwangwan padeih padeih naimei latkaeng hei Ruanglat khou peyna nai e. Mi rui dinhmei thu Ruanglat khou tone padeih nai e twtuang e. Ruanglat hei **contour tone** language e. Ruanglat khou mphaihmei khwangwan, bumkeymei khwangwan, ngangckumei khwangwan khatnic ruaknac khamv khakh twmei khwangwan - mi padeih hei nai e. Mi ti hei **level tone, falling tone, rising tone** khatnic **glottalised tone** twna kaw e. Tone padeih naimei latkaeng asaekc kabangc khou hylou e.

Level tone(-|)	Falling tone(\\\|)	Rising tone(/|)	Glottalised tone(?|)
lai (pot)	***lai*** (to follow)	***lai*** (to change)	***lai*** (to pour)
lau (field)	***lau*** (to borrow)	***lau*** (to dig out)	***lau*** (to eat)
suang (to ordain)	***suang*** (local deity)	***suang*** (to cook)	***suang*** (quick)
guai (once)	***guai*** (all)	***guai*** (sickly)	***guai*** (cow)
raa (to dismantle)	***raa*** (god)	***raa*** (to tell)	***raa*** (to chirp, roar)

Tone Madanhmei

Tone naimei lat hei tone hy kazauh nina e. Tone kathumh naimei lat hei tone kanei madanc nina e. Tone padeih nai ethei kathumh madanc nina e. Khat thu madanc lak nina e. Madanc makmei tone lwn tei 'mi tone the' twmei thaylou nina e. Tone madanhmei twmei thu **tone hiak naina hy o** twtuang e.

Ruanglat hei nsunh nseh ta saa makna major tone padeih nai e. Kumna tone kathumh madanc e, tone khat thu madanh mak ge, madanh makmei tone tei level tone the. **Falling tone** ta **v**, **rising** tone ta **c** , glottalised tone ta **h** piuna madanc e, khatnic falling tone khou **i** phaan **y**, **u** phaan **w** piu e. Kumna Ruanglat khwangwan pat nuh khang rui **c v h y w** mi guay khouhei *value kathanc tiilouna* tone symbol tiswlou the, tonalized symbol tiswlou the.

2.5.2 Tone Contrast (Khwangwan Matatpatmei)

Tone contrast hei kathai khang **gan** twmei latkaeng hei zauc kho. **'gan'** twmei hei Ruanglat khou nap lev tu kariumei gan ta thay e, kabah naimei kabiswmei latkaeng khat re. Mi hei **level tone** e. Mi hei khwangwan baic baicna saa pwkhou kabah baic baic e. Mi tei kabangc khouhei zauc kho.

/v/ v khwankiak khwan hei Ruanglat khwan khou maek ge. Kumna mi khwankiak tihei value kathanc tiilouna **falling tone** hiak swna laathaulou the.

gan **gan, ganv** hei kabah baih baihmei latkaeng khat khat re. Mi latkaeng kanei
ganv khou hei **g, g** hei nchamc e; **a, a** nic nchamc e. Tihkic, **n** lev **nv** hei nchamc mak ge. Mi khou hei tone contrast nai e. **gan** hei **level tone** e, **ganv** hei **falling tone** e. Falling tone tihei **v** rui madancna khiannahmei tei lyan e. Kumna **tone** kanei khiannahmei rui kabah baih baihmei latkaeng tipat re. Kumna Ruanglat khwan khou **level tone** khatnic **falling tone** hei kabah tipat ngammei khwan e twmei thay e.

Kumna **level tone** hei ***first tone*** the khatnic **falling tone** hei ***second tone*** the.

Latkamv :-	*level tone*	khaa	bam	tan
	falling tone	khav	bamv	tanv

/c/ Mi khwankiak khwan hei Ruanglat khwan khou maek ge. Kumna mi khwankiak tihei value kathanc tiilouna **rising tone** hiak swna laathaulou the

gan **gan, ganc** hei kabah naimei latkaeng khat khat re. Mi latkaeng kanei
ganc khou hei **g, g** hei nchamc e; **a, a** nic nchamc e. Tihkic, **n** lev **nc** hei nchamc mak ge. Mi khou hei tone contrast nai e. **gan** hei level tone e, **ganc** hei *rising tone* e. Mi rising tone tihei **c** piuna madanc e. Kumna tone kanei khiannahmei hei rui latkaeng zamh kabah baih baihmei tipat re. Kumna Ruanglat khou **rising tone** hei kabah tipat ngammei khwan e twmei ndauh e.

Rising tone hei ***third tone*** the.

Latkamv :-

level tone	=	phaa	bang	ding
rising tone	=	phac	bangc	dingc

/h/ Mi khwankiak hei Ruanglat khou khwan nai e tihkic mi hei final position khou maek ge. Kumtina Ruangmei pioneer writer nunc rui glotalized tone madanh khang piuguang khwan e. Kumna mi khwankiak tihei value kathanc tiilouna **glotalized tone** hiak swna laathaulou the

gan **gan, ganh** hei kabah naimei latkaeng khat khat re. Mi latkaeng kanei
ganh khouhei **g, g** hei nchamc e; **a, a** nic nchamc e. Tihkic, **n** lev **nh** hei nchamc mak ge. **gan** hei *level tone* e, **ganh** hei *glottalized tone* e. Mi glottalized tone tihei **h** piuna madanc e. Kumna tone kanei khiannahmei hei rui latkaeng zamh kabah baih baihmei tipat re. Kumna Ruanglat khou **glottalized** tone hei kabah tipat ngammei khwan e twmei ndauh e.

Glottalized tone hei ***fourth tone*** the.

Latkamv :-

level tone	=	zam	luai	guang
glottalized tone	=	zamh	luaih	guangh

/y/ Mi khwankiak khwan hei Ruanglat khwan khou maek ge. Kumna mi khwankiak tihei value kathanc tiilouna **falling tone** vowel hiak swna **/i/** phaan piu khang laathaulou the

hi **hy** **hi, hy** hei kabah naimei latkaeng khat khat re. Mi latkaeng kanei khouhei **h, h** hei nchamc e. Tihkic, **i** lev **y** hei nchamc mak ge. Mi khouhei tone contrast nai e. **hi** hei *level tone* e, **hy** hei *falling tone* e. Falling tone khou hei **i** phaan **y** lyn e.

Latkamv :-

level tone	=	bi	ding	rian	guai
falling tone	=	by	dyng	ryan	guay

/w/ Mi khwankiak khwan hei Ruanglat khwan khou maek ge. Kumna mi khwankiak tihei value kathanc tiilouna **falling tone** vowel hiak swna **u** phaan piu khang laathaulou the

nu **nw** **nu, nw** hei kabah naimei latkaeng khat khat re. Mi latkaeng kanei khouhei **n, n** hei nchamc e. Tihkic, **u** lev **w** hei nchamc mak ge. Mi khouhei tone contrast nai e. **nu** hei *level tone* e, **nw** hei *falling tone* e. **Falling tone** khouhei **u** phaan **w** lyn e.

Latkamv :-

level tone	=	pu	liu	ruang	riau
falling tone	=	pw	liw	rwang	riaw

Thaylou nimei -

First tone (**level tone**) hei madanh mak ge, kahiak duanh mak ge.

Second tone (**falling tone**) khou khwanlangv luaimei khou **v** hy kazauhlou e. Falling tone khou **i** phaan **y** hy e, **u** phaan **w** hy e; **i, u** kaneimei kazauh ethei nkhamhmei tei kalaih e.

Third tone (**rising tone**) khou khwanlangv luaimei khou **c** hy kazauhlou e.

Fourth tone (**glottalized tone**) khou khwanlangv luaimei khou **h** hy kazauhlou e.

Kumna Ruanglat khwan pat nuh khangrui **c v h y w** mi guay tihei tonemic tiswlou the, tonalized symbol tiswlou e. **h** hei Ruanglat khou khwandiu de tihkic pupouh nunc rui mi tihei tonemic swna **glottalised tone** tithaymei hiak swna piuguang the. Kumna aseicdou nganvna piu bam tuang e.

Tone Marker khang laathauloumei guay - **/v/ /c/ /h/ /y/ /w/**

Ruanglat hei phoneme kariumei kabah naimei latkaeng **'bam, tan, gan'** khou hei **tone** haaplouna kabah baih baihmei latkaeng tipat re. Tone hei kabah naimei khwan swpui zaengrui kahiak duanclou e, symbolise swlou e. Mitei kabangc khou zauc kho.

(Level tone = -|, falling tone = \|, rising tone = /|, glottalised tone = ?|)

Latkamv :-

bam -|	=	bam	=	Apu kai khou **bam** e
bam ||	=	bamv	=	Chouki hei **bamv** e.
bam /|	=	bamc	=	Tarav **bamc** e
bam ?|	=	bamh	=	Phey **bamh** khang kage nai e.
tan -|	=	tan	=	Kamei **tan** rui tat khwan e.
tan ||	=	tanv	=	Napbut ta **tanv** kaw e.
tan /|	=	tanc	=	Kamei **tanc** e twmei thay e.
tan ?|	=	tanh	=	**Tanh** khang nap tu geic o.
gan -|	=	gan	=	Thun **gan** tu e.
gan ||	=	ganv	=	Kathaipui **ganv** thay o.
gan /|	=	ganc	=	Mphuammei guay **ganc** o.
gan ?|	=	ganh	=	Tingthinc **ganh** key e.

Falling tone khwan khou **i, u** phaan **y, w** sinsw e. **y, w** hei low tone khou **i u** nai naimei twn tei lyn pwni, tihkic **i, u** kaneimei nai nchamc ethei nkhamh khamhmei ta lyn pwni.

Latkamv :-

i/y	hi	= bi **hi** e.	hy	= latrik **hy** e.
	huai	= gan **huai.**	huay	= kapna **huay.**
	sian	= **sian** giat re.	syan	= **syan** ry e.

u/w	nu	= **nu** e.	nw	= **nw** e, karaeng e.
	run	= py khou **run** e.	rwn	= si dui khou **rwn** e.
	khuan	= tauh **khuan** e.	khwan	= maansei **khwan** chu e.

Karuc khou saa kanmei kumcna Ruanglat tone hymei latkaeng asaekc kabangc khou hei hylou e, zauc kho.

Level tone	*falling tone*	*rising tone*	*glottalised tone*
raa	rav	rac	rah
ri	ry	ric	rih
su	sw	suc	suh
nei	ney	neic	neih
lai	lay	laic	laih
riu	riw	riuc	riuh
lau	law	lauc	lauh
lou	low	louc	louh
dui	duy	duic	duih
tan	tanv	tanc	tanh
guai	guay	guaic	guaih
suang	swang	suangc	suangh
riau	riaw	khiauc	riauh

2.5.3 Tone Shift

Ruanglat khou **tone shift** (khwangwan kalaihmei) nai e. Tone shift twmei thu latkaeng zamh kabah thu kalaih mak tihkic khwangwan thu kalaih twmei ta e. Mi hei grammatical meaning lev kariang naimei latbamv e.

Latkaeng tei grammatical form khatnic case kalaih pwkhou, khwangwan nic kalaih e. Noun khourui verb khou, adjective khou kalaih pwkhou khwangwan kalaih e. Mi tihei **tone shift** twna kaw e.

(a) Genetive case khou **glottalised tone** hei **rising tone** khou kalaih e.

Chah hei **chac** twna khwangwan shift sw e.
Chini **chac** zangv e. Chahnuy **chac** zangvgay e.
Nriangcluangcmei **chac** zangvgay chuy e.

Zouh hei **zouc** twna khwangwan kalaih e.
Napnaeng **zouc** zangvgay e.
Martha kai **zouc** ndeih e.

(b) Genetive case khou **rising tone** hei **level tone** khou kalaih e.

Zouc hei **zou** twna khwangwan kalaih e.
Khow**zou** meic ta ndev e.
Laulaih **zou** nrak ge.

Suc hei **su** twna khwangwan kalaih e.
Kaidaeng **su** nrak ge.
Khowraamv **su** kangaengv nraeng e.

(c) Noun khou bammei glottalised tone guay adjective hamhethei verb ngguanh pwkhou rising tone khou kalaih e.

Kai **daih**mei hei **daic** e.
Nap **geih**mei hei **geic** e.
Taanv **taanhmei** nunc **taanc** e.
Puatc **phunghmei** nunc rui **phungc** e.

(d) Prefix swna **ram** khatnic **karam** haaplouna noun hamhethei adjective ngguanh pwkhou tone kaguayna level tone khou raana kalaih e.

daihmei hei **ramdai** twna khwangwan kalaih e.
Mi guak **ramdai** kumhmei ai howlou mak ge.

suhmei hei **ramsu** twna khwangwan kalaih e.
Mai chuapmei **ramsu** khaengvlou khang thay mak ge.

zow hei **ramzou** twna khwangwan kalaih e.
Dui **ramzou** nthaek zat mak ge.

geihmei hei **karamgei** twna khwangwan kalaih e.
Karamgei tei saa ngam mak ge.

daihmei hei **karamdai** twna khwangwan kalaih e.
Karamdai tei kachav simei ramdai kumc e.

zow hei **karamzou** twna khwangwan kalaih e
Karamzou tei zow katumc hak e.

Khwangwan kalaihmei hei Ruanglat khwan khou kabiswmei lwnlung - fundamental element khat re. Mi hei grammar lev kariang nai e. Kumhpui zaengrui Ruanglat hymei khou tone shift hei hy e.

KATHAIDWAN - 7

1. Ruanglat tihei kabah tipat bammei kabiswmei sound element kathumh nai e. Tabui tabui tei cho ?
2. Lat kathaimei khou tone zaat kanei nai e. Tabui tabui tei cho ? Ruanglat hei tabui tone zaat cho ?
3. Ruanglat khou tone azuh nai bo ? Tabui tabui tei cho ? Tone guay zanc hy o.
4. Tone shift tabui ta cho ? Tone shift rui Ruanglat khou tabui sw bo ?
5. Ruanglat khou tone hymei hiak tabui tabui tei cho ?
6. Low tone hymei khou **i**, **u** phaan tabui hiak rui lyn cho ? Latkaeng khatna khou **i u** nai nchamc ethei akumhna hy ni cho ?
7. Khwangwan (Tone) hiak hy o.

   mphaihmei khwangwan hiak =

   bumkeymei khwangwan hiak =

   dungckumei khwangwan hiak =

   ruaknac khamvkhakh hiak =

CHADAADWAN

TEST-1

1. Ruanglat khwan khou vowel azuh nai cho ? Hy o.
2. Diphthong tabui ta cho ? Ruanglat khwan khou diphthong azuh nai cho ? Tabui tabui cho ?
3. ***ei*** khatnic ***ou*** hei diphthong phaan lynmei hiak raana the. Mi diphthong hei tabui tabui vowel rui kariu tuang cho ? Hyna dinc o.
6. Triphthong tabui ta cho ? Ruanglat khwan khou triphthong azuh nai cho ?
7. Khwanlangv (syllable) tabui ta cho ? Latkaeng khat khou khwanlangv azuh nai cho ?
8. Khwanlangv khatnamei, kaneimei khatnic kathumhmei latkaeng nang raana makumhna hy o.
9. Ruanglat hei tone naimei lat re. Tabui tone zaat cho?

RUANGLAT KHWAN HIAK

Ruanglat khwan nthuihna hy khang khwan, khwangwan, nwkang khwan hy khang vowel 24, prenasalised 1 khatnic consonant 18 kage nai e. Roman alphabet khou Ruanglat khwan pat nuhmei Consonant 18 khatnic Vowel 5 hei mphang e, tihkic baihmei guay thu mphang mak ge. Kumpui zaengrui kahiak asaekc thu value kathanc tiilouna duancpat duancgutna laagut the.

Ruanglat khwan guay hy khang laathauloumei hiak guay.

Ruanglat khwan hy khang laathauloumei hiak 29 nai e. Mi khoutei vowel hiak 9, consonant hiak 18 khatnic tone hiak 2 e.

VOWEL hiak : **a aa ae e i y o u w**

(Kathanc swna laagutmei **aa ae y w**)

CONSONANT hiak : **p ph b m**
k kh g ng
t th d n
ch s z
l r
h

TONE hiak **c v *h*** (kathanc swna laagutmei **c v**)

PRENASALIZED hiak: ***m n ng***

SAAPATPUI BAMV THEI LAYNA

Kahiak guay hei *saapatpui bamv* theilayna khatnic *khwankang* theilayna kalangv kalangv lou kaduai nuh e.

Saapat pui bamv

chy kanei	-	p	ph	b	m
huh, huhnii	-	t	th	d	
huhnii (hu biak)	-	n	l	s	z
huhnii (kalung biak)	-	r			

2.6.0 KAHIAK LAATHAUMEI
(Adoption of Alphabet)

Kaganv khat khou Ruanglat hei Bengali hiak piuna hylou khwan e. Mi tei Ruanglat khwan hymei khou guangtangc kunghmei naipui zaeng rui Bengali hiak hei ganckey lana Roman script hei piu dat khwan e. Bengali hiak pwnic Roman hiak bam pwnic Ruangmei khwan katuk kalik thu hyguangtangc ngam makmei peyna nai e.

Thaurey khou kahiak laathaumei ganv khou Roman alphabet twna kawmei hiak 26 hei kapwmna laathauna piu guang the.

Lat khat hy nimei khwan hiak guay hei lev Vowel khatnic Consonant phoneme sing hei chaa raphrap ni tuang e. Tihkic Roman Alphabet khou naimei hiak guay hei Ruanglat khang kage naimei hiak asaekc maek ge, kage maekmei hiak asaekc nic nai e. Mi hei tabui swtina cho ? Ruanglat khwan khou phoneme nai e, prenasalised sound nai e, tone nai e tihkic Roman hiak khou phoneme na nai e, prenasalised sound maek ge, tone maek ge. Kumhpui zaengrui Ruanglat khwan hy khang Roman alphabet laathau pwkhou prenasalised sound khang khatnic tone khang kahiak gaat re. Kumna mi gaatmei twn hei guangtangh khang Ruanglat khou piu makmei Roman hiak asaekc khou value kathanc haaplouna duancpat duancgut khang kage asaekc nai e. Mi lwan kahak hei Ruanglat hymei khou piu bam e.

Ruanglat khwan hy khang laathaumei khwan hiak guay hei kathai khang kabangc khou hylou e.

ROMAN ALPHABET

Roman alphabet khou kahiak 26 nai e. Mi khoutei vowel hiak 5, consonant hiak 19, khatnic semi-vowel hiak 2 nai e.(Mi hei Englishmei rui piumei thiak khoutei saa tuang e.)

VOWELS :	a	e	i	o	u				
SEMI-VOWELS :	w	y							
CONSONANT:	b	c	d	f	g	h	j	k	l
	m	n	p	q	r	s	t	v	z

10. Ruanglat khou tone azuh nai cho? Tabui tabui tei cho?

11. Kabangc khou tiiloumei latkaeng guay hei tone padeih padeih nai e. Mi tei hy o.

khaa ....

ri ....

gan ....

siang ....

12. Tone shift tabui ta cho? Ruanglat khou tone shift nai bo?
Tone shift (khwangwan kalaihmei) hy o.

chah = chini .....

zouh = napnaeng .....

ramh = tabui .....

zouc = khow.....

geic = ram .....

daic = ram .....

hy = karam .....

thay = karam .....

13. Prenasalized sound tabui ta cho ? Tiiloumei latkaeng guay khou hei nwkwang khwan hyna latkaeng kabah tikalaih o.

Latkamv :- *pui* - *mpui*

pei - pei

bamh - bamh

khwan - khwan

huhni-huh biak	-	ch				
Tangvnangh mbuaihmei	-	k	kh	g	ng	
Ruak	-	h				

Khwankang thei layna

Bilabial	-	p	ph	b	m	
Alveolar	-	t	th	d	n	
	-	ch	s	z	r	l
Velar	-	k	kh	g	ng	
Pharyngeal Glottal	-	h				

Pahpui khwan

P/p	**Ph/ph**	**B/b**	**M/m**	
pa	pha	ba	ma	
K/k	**Kh/kh**	**G/g**	**Ng/ng**	
ka	kha	ga	nga	
T/t	**Th/th**	**D/d**	**M/m**	
ta	tha	da	na	
Ch/ch	**S/s**	**Z/z**	**L/l**	**R/r**
cha	sa	za	la	ra
H/h				
ha				

Roman Alphabet khou Ruanglat khwan maekmei

Ruanglat khou khwan maekmei	**Ruanglat tone hy khang kathanc swna laathaumei**
C c.....	'c' hei rising tone hy khang laathaulou the
F f.....	-
J j.....	-
Q q	-
V v.....	'v' hei falling tone hy khang lathaulou the

Ww..... 'w' hei falling tone khou
'u' phaan hy khang lathaulou the

X x..... -

y ..... 'y' hei falling tone 'i' phaan hy khang laathaulou the.

Ruanglat hy khang laathau makmei Roman Alphabet

F f J j Q q X x

Mi hiak guay Ruanglat khwan hy khang piu mak ge. Tihkic loan word guay khou thu piuna hy e.

KATHAIDWAN-8

1. Ruanglat khou khwan hiak kaguayna azuh nai cho ? Vowel hiak azuh nai cho ? Consonant hiak azuh nai cho ?

khwan hiak kaguayna

.....

vowel hiak guay

.....

consonant hiak guay

.....

tone hiak guay

.....

2. Ruanglat khwan khou khwankang theilayna kabangc khou tiiloumei khwankang padeih hei nai e. Khwankang hiak guay tei hy o.

bilabial khwankang _____

alveolar khwankang _____

velar khwankang _____

pharyngeal glottal _____

3. Ruanglat khwan khou tangvnangh mbuaihmei khourui patmei khwan azuh nai cho? Tabui tabui tei cho?

4. Ruanglat khwan khou maekmei Roman alphabet hiak azuh nai bo ? Tabui tabui tei cho?

5. Roman alphabet khou rui Ruanglat tone hy khang laathauloumei hiak azuh nai bo ? Tabui tabui tei cho ?

2.7.0 HYMEI LWAN
(Writing System)

Ruanglat tihei **khwandiu** (phoneme), **khwangwan** (tone) khatnic **nwkwang khwan** (prenasalized sound) rui latkaeng zamh kabah tipatlou e. Mi hei kahu thangc ncham kan the. Mi ruc khoutei **khwangwan kalaihmei** (tone shift) nai e, tone shift rui grammatical meaning tikalaihlou e. Kumhpui zaengrui Ruanglat hymei ganv khou phoneme, tone, prenasalized sound, khatnic tone shift hei hy mak nuh mak ge.

Duina saa pwkhou Ruanglat hei prenasalized sound + consonant + vowel + tone (PCVT) hy e. Mi tei kabangc khou lyanlou e.

(C = Consonant, V = Vowel, T = Tone, P = Prenasal)

CV	=	**raa** (kai raamei)	**khaa** (raengmei, kagiatcmei)
CVT	=	**rav** (ravsic)	**khav** (dui khou naimei khav)
PCVT	=	**nrav** (paeng nravmei)	**nkhav** (khanggou nduanghmei)
CVC	=	**tan** (phay)	**bam** (bammei, kabam)
PCVC	=	**ntan** (tichadaamei)	**mbam** (tidunghmei, kapwm)
CVCT	=	**tanv** (napbut)	**bamv** (dwng)
PCVCT	=	**ntanv** (Kadakmei)	**mbamv** (duimei, nnaamei)

2.7.1 VOWEL HYMEI

Thaylou rey nimei -

Khwan kathaimei khou **kahouhmei** (initial), **nchung** (medial), **luaimei**(final) twmei guay hei **latkaeng** (word) hamhethei **khwanlangv** (syllable) lungc khou khwandiu zamh position ta saa tuang e.

(i) Monophthong hymei (Vowel khatna hymei)

a - **a** hei karaana initial, medial khatnic final khou hy pwkhou kalwn kalaih makna hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
abah	bam	la

amuc	gan	na
apui	tat	ta

aa - **aa** hei latkaeng khwan **kahouh** (initial) khou **aa+i** hei ***ai*** twna hy e, nchung khatnic luaimei khou **aa** swna hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
ai	laamh	gaa
-	gaanv	khaa
-	saan	saa

Nchung khou consoant kanei kak khou **aa** hy e, **open** final khou **level tone** khou ***aa*** hy e, baihmei tone khou ***a*** khatna + ***tone*** haaplouna ***av, ac, ah*** hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	laan	khaa
-	laanv	khav
-	laanc	khac
-	laanh	khah

ae - **ae** hei **kahouh** khou khatnic **luaimei** khou hy mak ge, nchung khou na hy e, - **ng** lev **k** rui final swmei syllable **nchung** khou na hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	gaek	-
-	laeng	-

e - **e** hei **kahouhmei** khou hy mak ge, **nchung** khou hy mak ge. **luaimei** khou hy e. ***e, ge, re, the*** twna hy e.

i - **i** hei **kahouh** khou hy mak ge **nchung** khou khatnic **luaimei** hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	bin	bi
-	dik	hi
-	git	si

ii - hei **i** khwan saenghmei khou hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	tii
-	-	kii

y - **y** hei **i** zamh bumkeymei khwangwan *(falling tone)* swna hy e.

- **y** hei **kahouh** khou hy mak ge, **nchung** khou khatnic **luaimei** khou hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	dym	by
-	hyng	dy
-	thyn	ry

o - **o** hei **kahouh** khou ***oh, ov*** twna hy e, baihmei latkaeng kahouh khou hy mak ge.

o hei Ruanglat khwan **nchung** khou, consonant kanei kak khou hy mak ge.

Luaimei khou **o** hei hy e. ***o, lo, tho, tio, rio*** twna hy e.

u - **u** hei **kahouh** khou ***u tho, ui*** twmei kumhmei khou na hy e.

u hei **nchung** khatnic **luaimei** khou hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
u	bung	nu
ui	khuk	hu
-	mun	lu

w - **w** hei **u** zamh bumkeymei khwangwan *(falling tone)* swna hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	dwm	bw
-	khwn	nw
-	lwn	sw

(ii) Diphthong Hymei (Vowel Kanei Kariumei Khwan Hymei)

a - **a** zamh diphthong hei **a+i** lev **a+u** na nai e.

a+i = ei

a lev **i** hy kariu pwkhou ***ei*** swna hy e.

Luaimei khou open final swna hy e,

kahouh khou khatnic **nchung** khou hy mak ge.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	bei
-	-	gei
-	-	rei

a+y = ey

ey hei **ei** zamh bumkeymei khwangwan swna hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	key
-	-	gey
-	-	rey

a+u = ou

a lev ***u*** hy kariu pwkhou ***ou*** khwan pat re, kumna ***ou*** swna hy e.

ou hei **kahouh** khou hy mak ge.

Nchung khou hy mak ge.

Luaimei khou **open final** swna hy e, - ***kou, pou, tou***

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	bou
-	-	khou
-	-	sou

a+w = ow

ow hei **ou** zamh bumkeymei khwangwan swna hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	bow
-	-	khow
-	-	sow

aa **aa** hei baihmei vowel lev hy kariu pwkhou **a** khatna hy e.

Kabangc khou hei zauc kho.

aa+i = ai

ai hei **kahouh** khou **open initial** swna ***ai*** twna hy e.

Baihmei khou **initial** swna hy mak ge.

Nchung khou hy mak ge.

Luaimei khou **open final** swna hy e. -

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
ai	-	kai
-	-	lai
-	-	pai

aa+y + ay

ay hei **ai** zamh bumkeymei khwangwan khou hy e.

Kahouh khou khatnic **nchung** khou hy mak ge.

Luaimei khou **open final** swna hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	gay
-	-	khay
-	-	may

aa+u = au.

aa+u hei hy kariu pwkhou **au** swna hy e.

au hei **kahouh** khou khatnic **nchung** khou hy mak ge.

Luaimei khou **open final** swna hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	bau
-	-	kau
-	-	lau

aa+w = aw

aw hei **au** zamh bumkeymei khwangwan khou hy e.

Kahouh khou khatnic **nchung** khou hy mak ge.

Luaimei khou **open final** swna hy e, -

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	daw
-	-	khaw
-	-	zaw

i **i+aa = ia**

ia hy kariumei hei -

Kahouh khou khatnic **luaimei** khou hy mak ge.

*(Tihkic, **hia, sia** twmei kumhmei ruph khwan khou saa e, hy nuh e.)*

Nchung khou hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	pian	-
-	rian	-
-	sian	-

i+u = iu

iu hei **kahouh** khou khatnic **nchung** khou hy mak ge.

Luaimei khou **open final** swna hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	biu
-	-	liu
-	-	piu

i+w = iw

iw hei **iu** zamh bumkeymei khwangwan khou hy e.

Kahouh khou khatnic **nchung** khou hy mak ge.

Luaimei khou hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	biw
-	-	hiw
-	-	liw

y **y+aa = ya**

ya hei **ia** zamh bumkeymei khwangwan khou hy e.

Kahouh khou khatnic **luaimei** khou hy mak ge.

Nchung khou hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	hyam	-
-	lyan	-
-	syang	-

Thaylou nimei - *Ruanglat khwan khou kahouh khou, nchung khou, luaimei khou* **ie** *khwan maek ge, hy mak ge.*

u **u+aa = ua**

ua hei **kahouh** khou hy mak ge.

luaimei khou ***nggua, kua, chua*** - mi kumhmei khou na hy e.

Nchung khou hy e. -

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	guang	nggua
-	luang	kua
-	ruang	chua

w **w+aa = wa**

wa hei **ua** zamh bumkeymei khwangwan khou hy e.

Kahouh khou khatnic **luaimei** khou hy mak ge.
Nchung khou consonant kanei kak khou hy e.
Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	mwang	-
-	rwang	-
-	swang	-

Thaylou nimei - *Ruanglat khou **uo** khwan maek ge. Kumna kahouh khou, nchung khou khatnic luaimei khou **uo** hy mak ge.*

u+i = ui

Kahouh khou khatnic **nchung** khou hy mak ge.
Luaimei khou **open final** swna hy e.
Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	dui
-	-	gui
-	-	pui

(**ui** hei saamei asaekc nai e, tihkic ***hui!*** twmei lev khatna de, local accent de.)

u+y = uy

uy hei **ui** zamh bumkeymei khwangwan khou hy e.
Kahouh khou khatnic **nchung** khou hy mak ge.
Luaimei khou **open final** swna hy e.
Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	duy
-	-	guy
-	-	khuy

(iii) Triphthong Hymei (Vowel Kathumh Kariumei Khwan Hymei)

Ruanglat khou vowel kathumh kariumei khwan **triphthong** kanei nai e - **iau** khatnic **uai** hei e. *(**w, y** final swmei hei tho **u, i** zamh bumkeymei khwangwan de).*

i+aa+u = iau

iau hei **kahouh** khou khatnic **nchung** khou hy mak ge.
Luaimei khou **open final** swna hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	liau
-	-	khiauc
-	-	riau

i+aa+w = iaw

iaw hei **iau** zamh bumkeymei khwangwan swna hy e.
Kahouh khou khatnic **nchung** khou hy mak ge.
Luaimei khou hy e.
Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	khiaw
-	-	miaw
-	-	riaw

u+aa+i = uai

uai hei **kahouh** khou hy mak ge, **nchung** khou hy mak ge.

Luaimei khou **open final** swna hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	guai
-	-	luai
-	-	phuai

u+aa+y = uay

uay hei **uai** zamh bumkeymei khwangwan swna hy e.

Kahouh khou hy mak ge, **nchung** khou hy mak ge.

Luaimei khou **open final** swna hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	khuay
-	-	luay
-	-	muay

2.7.2 TONE HYMEI (Khwangwan Hymei)

Vowel lev Consonant rui kabah naimei khwan (latkaeng) tipatmei kumcna Ruanglat khou tone rui latkaeng zamh kabah tipat re twmei hei kahu thangc ncham kan the. Kumna tone hei consonant, vowel hymei kumcna hy nina e. Ruanglat khou tone padeih nai e - (1) *level tone,* (2) *falling tone,* (3) *rising tone* khatnic (4) *glottalized tone* - mi guay hei e. Mi tone padeih khouhei *level tone* thu madanh mak ge. *Falling tone* ta **v** piuna madanc e, ***i***, ***u*** phaan ***y***, ***w*** piu e. *Rising tone* ta **c** piuna madanc e, khatnic *glottalized tone* ta **h** piuna madanc e. Mi guay hei kahu khou ncham kan the. Kumna mi tone guay hei hymei thiak kabangc khou lyanlou e.

(C = consonant, V = vowel, T = tone)

Structure	Level tone	Falling tone	Rising tone	Glottalized tone
CV+T	raa	rav	rac	rah
CV+T	ri	ry	ric	rih
CVV+T	gei	gey	geic	geih
CVV+T	zou	zow	zouc	zouh
CVC+T	bang	bangv	bangc	bangh
CVC+T	tan	tanv	tanc	tanh
CVVC+T	rian	ryan	rianc	rianh
CVVC+T	buan	bwan	buanc	buanh
CVVV+T	guai	guay	guaic	guaih
CVVV+T	riau	riaw	riauc	riauh

Mi hei kumcna hy ethei pac nlaanh dat mak khe, pac nlaanhmei rau the.

2.7.3 NWKWANG KHWAN HYMEI (Prenasalized Sound Hymei)

Ruanglat khou prenasalized sound (nwkwang khwan) rui latkaeng zamh kabah tipat re. Kumhpui zaeng rui nwkwang khwan hei Ruanglat khou consonant, vowel hymei kumcna hy e. Nwkwang khwan hei khatna de, tihkic sound environment theilayna **m, n, ng** piuna hy e. *(P = prenasalized sound, C = consonant, V = vowel, T = tone).*

Structure	Level tone	Falling tone	Rising tone	Glottalized tone
CVT	raa	rav	rac	rah
P+CVT	nraa	nrav	-	nrah
CVT	ri	ry	ric	rih
P+CVT	nri	-	nric	nrih
CVVT	gei	gey	geic	geih
P+CVVT	nggei	-	-	-
CVVT	zou	zow	zouc	zouh
P+CVVT	nzou	-	-	nzouh
CVCT	bang	bangv	bangc	bangh
P+CVCT	mbang	mbangv	-	mbangh
CVCT	tan	tanv	tanc	tanh
P+CVCT	ntan	ntanv	-	ntanh
CVVCT	rian	ryan	rianc	rianh
P+CVVCT	-	-	-	nrianh
CVVCT	buan	bwan	buanc	buanh
P+CVVCT	-	mbwan	-	-
CVVVT	guai	guay	guaic	guaih
P+CVVVT	ngguai	ngguay	-	ngguaih
CVVVT	riau	riaw	riauc	riauh
P+CVVVT	-	-	-	-

Thaylou nimei *- Prenasalized hei* ***im, in, an*** *twna hy mak ge,* ***m n ng*** *swna hy e.*

2.7.2 CONSONANT HYMEI

Kahouhmei (Initials)

Ruanglat hymei khou Consonant 18 gut re. Mi Consonant guay hei **kahouh** (initial) khou hy ngam e.

Latkamv: -

pat, ***ph***u, ***b***ei, ***m***ai;
kai, ***kh***at, ***g***ut, ***ng***am;
tat, ***th***ing, ***d***ui, ***n***ap,
chai, ***s***i, ***z***ei, ***r***ei, ***l***at, ***h***au

Nchung (Medials)

Ruangmei *latkaeng* **nchung** (med) khou Consonant 18 hei hy ngam e.

Latkamv: -

ka***p***ah, ka***ph***ut, cha***b***amv, ka***m***ang;
cha***k***at, cha***kh***aengv, cha***g***ou, cha***ng***uth;
cha***t***u, cha***th***wan, cha***d***aa, cha***n***ui;
ta***ch***at, ta***s***ianc, ma***z***ath, cha***r***ay ma***l***aa, ka***h***ei

Luaimei (Finals)

Ruanglat khwan hamhethei latkaeng **luailoumei** hiak (final) 6 nai e. Mi guay kiu thu **p, m, k, ng, t, n** hei e.

Latkamv :-

na***p***, pa***m***, ba***k***, na***ng***, ta***t***, ga***n***

Thaylou nimei - *Ruanglat hymei khou **g, b, d, l** - mi consonant guay hei final/stop swna hy mak ge.*

KATHAIDWAN - 9

1. Ruanglat hymei khou phoneme, tone, khatnic prenasalized sound hei hy mak nuh mak ge. Tabui zaeng cho ?
2. Ruanglat hy khou tabui tabui tei hy cho ? Nchumhmei tei tick sw o.

(a)	consonants,	☐	(b)	vowels,	☐
(c)	tones,	☐	(d)	prenasalized sound	☐
(e)	intonation	☐	(f)	circumflex	☐

3. Ruanglat hymei khou consonant kanei kak khou

o	naie	☐	maek ge	☐
e	nai e	☐	maek ge	☐
io	nai e	☐	maek ge	☐

4. Ruanglat hymei khou *kahouh* khou, *nchung* khou khatnic luaimei khou

ie	nai e	☐	maek ge	☐

5. Prenasalized sound hei -

im, in, an	hy e	hy mak ge
m, n, ng	hy e	hy mak ge

6. Tone guay hei -

bumkeymei	-	_____ piuna madanc e.
dungckumei	-	_____ piuna madanc e.
ruaknac khamvkhak	-	_____ piuna madanc e.
i, u phaan	-	_____ lyn e.

7. Hy suakpat ro -

		falling tone
Latkamv :-		
a + i =	ei	ey
a + u =	.....	.....
aa + i =	.....	.....
aa + u =	.....	.....
i + aa =	.....	.....
u + aa =	.....	.....
i + aa + u =	.....	.....
u + aa + i =	.....	.....

8. Ruanglat khwan khou luaimei khou naimei consonant finals azuh nai bo ? Tabui tabui tei cho ? Hyna nchin o.

CHADAADWAN

Test - 2

1. Englishmei rui piumei Roman script khou hei Ruangmei khwan khang gaatmei kanei nai e. Tabui tabui tei cho ? Nchumhmei khuk tei hygoulou o.
   a) prenasalized sound hiak maek ge ☐
   b) tone hiak maek ge ☐
   c) consonant gaat re ☐
   d) semi vowel gaat re ☐
2. Tabui ta saa tuang cho ?
   a) bilabial ----------
   b) alveolar ----------
   c) velar ----------
3. Ruanglat hy khang laathauloumei hiak -
   a) tone hiak guay - _____
   b) nwkwang khwan hiak - _____
   c) consonant hiak - _____
   d) vowel hiak - _____
4. Ruanglat hymei khou PCVT piuna hy e. Mi hiak guay hei tabui tabui ta lyn tu cho ?
   P =_____ C =_____
   V = _____ T =_____
5. Ruanglat diphthong khwan - (nchumhmei khuk tei hygoulou o, nkhuaimei khiatlou o)
   a) **a + u** hei **ou** twna hy e ☐
   b) **a + i** hei **ei** twna hy e ☐
   c) **aa** hei diphthong khou **a** khatna hy e ☐
   e) **oi** diphthong nai e ☐
   f) **uo** diphthong nai e ☐
6. Ruanglat khwan khou consonant stop (final) charuk nai e. Tabui tabui tei cho ?
   _____
7. Ruanglat hy khang kahiak laathau khou Roman script tabui tabui tei ganclou duc bo ? Hyna dinc o.

PART II
LATRIAK (GRAMMAR)

3.0 LATKAENG KATHAIMEI
(Morphology)

Morphology tabui ta cho ?

Phoneme kanei, kathumh khatnic mi khangsuangc geicna kariuna kabah patmei latkiak khatnic latkaeng kasiamh e.

Phoneme guay kariuna duancpatmei nthyam liangmei kabah naimei latkaeng kiak tatei **morpheme** (latkiak) kaw e. 'Alauc' twmei latkaeng hei phoneme guay kariuna duanh tuang e. Mi tihei swbakkey dat pwkhou phoneme guay mphang e, tihkic kabah naimei latkiak thu mphang mak ge. 'Ravguangc' twmei latkaeng hei kalangv kanei swbakkey pwkhou 'Rav' twmei khat lev 'guangc' twmei khat mphang e. 'Rav' hei kabah naimei latkiak khat re ,'guangc' twmei hei nic kabah naimei latkiak khat re. Mi 'rav' lev 'guangc' hei swbakkey dat pwkhou mi nei tihei duancthaumei phoneme guay tei mphang e, tihkic kabah naimei langv thu mphang mak khe. Kumna, alauc, rav, guangc twmei guay hei Morpheme kiu the. Kumna nthyam liangmei kabah naimei latkaeng kiak ta tei Morpheme (latkiak) kaw e.

Morpheme tihei second bracket rui raenglou e. {alauc} {rav} {guangc} mi kumna swlou ethei morpheme e twmei thay e.

Alauc, tachat, chaengkhaek twmei latkaeng hei syllable kanei kanei nai e. **alauc, tachat** hei swbak dat nuh makmei latkaeng e, mi nei hei morpheme khat khat re. **Changkhaek** hei **chaeng + khaek** twmei kabah naimei latkiak kanei rui duanh tuang e, chaeng hei morepheme khat re, khaek hei morpheme khat re.

Latkamv khang :-

Morpheme khatnamei latkaeng
kai, mazah, padei

Morpheme kanei rui duancthaumei latkaeng
kai + thei = kaithei
nap + guy = napguy
lau + phunhmei = lauphunhmei

Morpheme kathumh rui duancthaumei latkaeng -

lau + kummei + kah	=	laukwmkac
ntiang + khianghmei + kakui	=	tiangkhiangkui
nap + kathanc + mun	=	napthancmun

Morpheme phungcpatmei, morpheme guay rui akumhna latkaeng duancpat tuang cho twmei khatnic latkaeng kathaimei lwan ta tei **Morphology** kaw e.

Kumna Morphology lwan khou hei Noun Categories, Verbal Categories khatnic Word Class twmei thu Parts of Speech hei kadai swmei e.

3.1.0 NOUN KIK (Noun Categories)

3.1.1 Kuidui (Gender)

Grammar khou Gender khaklanghmei hei ntumei ngaanvmei, kakui kaduic khatnic kakui kaduic kalangv thaymakmei twna kalwnlung swna kathai guang e.

Kathiulaa laamei ringhmei guay hei kakui lev kaduic nai ngam e. Ntaw hei kabangc khou hyloumei guay hei zauc kho.

meicpui	tunac,	rammav	ruaykui	chakou,
meicpu	nggaanv	guangh	ruayduic	chabwam

Mi khou nang tabui howpat bo ? Latkaeng kanei kanei hy mpiangloumei hei reymei hei kakui zaat guay zanc e. Kaneimei latkaeng guay hei kaduic zaat guay zanc e.

(1) **Kaduic ta thaymei Noun latkaeng ta Masculine Gender kaw e.**

Latkamv: -

mpouh, pu, siluh, guaihchic, ruayduic - mi guay hei kaduic ta thaymei noun raana e.

Ruanglat khou kaduic ta thaymei noun khatnic pronoun latkaeng guay khou -ang -pu, -pou, -pouc, -luh, -chic, duic, -duc hei suffix swna haaplouna Masculine Gender ngguanh e.

(2) **Kakui ta thaymei noun latkaeng ta Feminine Gender kaw e.**

Latkamv:-

luh, pui, ruaykui, sinai, guaihkui.

Ruanglat khou kakui ta thaymei noun khatnic pronoun latkaeng guay khou -lu, -liu, -kui, -pui, -peic, -neic, -nay, - mikumhmei hei suffix swna haaplouna Feminine Gender ngguanh e.

(3) **Kakui ta nic kaduic ta nic saa nuhmei - thay kariumei noun latkaeng ta Common Gender kaw e.**

Latkamv: -

ngaasatna, pam, nruna, zauczihmei, alauc, gaanv (meic, meicsing) mikumhmei guay e.

(4) **Kakui kaduic maekmei ta thaymei noun latkaeng ta Neuter Gender kaw e.**

Latkamv:-

thingbang, hypei, kai, latrik, football, - mikumhmei guay.

3.1.2 KASING LWAN

3.1.2.1 Kasing (Number)

Grammar kathaimei khou kasing khat ta thaymei noun ta singular number twna thay e. Kasing khat khangsuangc geic hianmei tithaymei noun ta Plural Number twna thay e. Mi hei grammar guay khou ncham e.

Ruanglat khou Number (Kasing) hei kabangc khou hyloumei kumcna zauc nuh e.

ai	nang	kamei
aney	nangney	kaney
aniu	nangniw	kaniw
aniw guay	nangniw guay	kaniw guay
Thingbang	guak	suc
Thingbang nei	guak nei	suc nei
Thingbang guay	guak guay	suc guay
	guaknunc guay	Sucnunc guay

Reymei latkaeng rian hei rui *kasing khat* ta tithay e. Kaneimei latkaeng rian hei rui *kasing kanei* ta tithay e, khatnic kathumhmei latkaeng rian hei rui *kathumh khatnic kathumh khangsuangc geic hianmei* ta tithay e.Padeihmei rian hei rui geihmei zamh geihmei (plural of plural) ta thay e.

Kumna Ruanglat khou number hei kathumh swna pat re. Mi guay kiu thu - **khat sing, kanei sing** khatnic **geih sing**, mi guay hei e.

(a) **Kasing khat, khatna ta tithaymei noun, pronoun ta Khat Sing** (Singular Number) **kaw e.**

Latkamv: -

ai, kamei, nang, guaih, tingthai - mikumhmei hei e.

(b) **Kasing kanei ta tithaymei noun, pronoun ta Kanei Sing** (Dual Number) **twna kaw e.**

Latkamv:-

aney, kaney, nangney, guaih nei, tingthai nei - mikumhmei hei e.

(c) **Kasing kathumh khatnic kathumh khangsuangc geihmei ta Geih Sing** (Plural Number) **kaw e.**

Latkamv:-

aniw, kaniw, nangniw, sucnunc, guaihnunc

(d) Mi na hamhna Ruanglat khou **plural** zamh **plural** nai e.

Ruanglat khou Plural zamh Plural nai e. Mi ti hei Geihmei Geih Sing kaw e.

Latkamv:-

aniw guay, zoucnunc guay

3.1.2.2 Kasingpav (Numeral)

(1) Kasingsing (Cardinal Numerals)

Kasing pahmei lwan ta **kasingsing** kaw e. Ruanglat khou kasingsing hei kabangc khou hyloumei hei kumcna nai e. Kasingsing latbi (root) guay hei phay hamhmei baihmei guay thu khwanlangv (syllable) kanei kanei rui sw e.

akhat, kanei, kathumh, padeih, panguh, charuk, chanei, tachat, chakiu, aruh.

akhat, aruh, phay, aching, akhaa, apang, ngalang, atung, ngalung - twna nai e.

Ruanglat khou **Kasingsing** hei *akhat, aruh, phay* twlana *aching* tangc pwkhou kasingsing zanc kalaih e. Duina saa pwkhou ching tanghpui pum kazanc kalaih e. Mi hei kabangc khou hyna nchinlou e.

akhat	=		1	=	1
aruh	=		10	=	10
phay	=		100	=	100
aching	x 1	=	chingkhat	=	1,000
aching	x 10	=	chingruh	=	10,000
aching	x 100	=	chingphay	=	100,000
akhaa	x 1	=	akhaakhat	=	1,000,000
akhaa	x 10	=	akhaaruh	=	10,000,000
akhaa	x 100	=	akhaaphay	=	100,000,000
apang	x 1	=	apangkhat	=	1,000,000,000
apang	x 10	=	apangruh	=	10,000,000,000
apang	x 100	=	apangphay	=	100,000,000,000
ngalang	x 1	=	ngalangkhat	=	1,000,000,000,000
ngalang	x10	=	ngalangruh	=	10,000,000,000,000
ngalang	x100	=	ngalangphay	=	100,000,000,000,000
atung	x1	=	atungkhat	=	1,000,000,000,000,000
atung	x10	=	atungruh	=	10,000,000,000,000,000
atung	x100	=	atungphay	=	100,000,000,000,000,000
ngalung	x1	=	ngalungkhat	=	1,000,000,000,000,000,000
ngalung	x10	=	ngalungruh	=	10,000,000,000,000,000,000
ngalung	x100	=	ngalungphay	=	100,000,000,000,000,000,000

Kasing pahmei thiak duancpatmei lwan hei kabangc khou hylou e,

1 = akhat,
2 = kanei,
3 = kathumh,
4 = padeih,
5 = panguh,
6 = charuk,
7 = chanei,
8 = tachat,
9 = chakiu,
10 = aruh = Aruh tangc ethei kasing riak khat the. Kasing riak 1, hamhethei kasing banv 1 twna kaw nuh e.

10 na 1 mbu = 11 mbu = 11 (ruhkhat),
10 na 2 mbu = 12 mbu = 12 (ruhkanei),
10 na 3 mbu = 13 mbu = 13 (ruhkathumh)

20 = achuih
20 na 1 mbu = 21 mbu = 21(chuihkhat),
20 na 2 mbu = 22 mbu = 22(chuihkanei),
20 na 3 mbu = 23 mbu = 23(chuihkathumh)
30 = tamruc
30 na 1 mbu = 31 mbu = 31 (tamruckhat), ...
40 = kasing riak 4 = 40 = riakdei (kasing 10 = kasing riak 1;
kasing riak 4 = 10 x 4 = 40)
50 = riakngu, 60 = riakcharuk, 70 = riakchanei, 80 = riaktachat, 90 = riakchakiu

100 = phay, hamhethei, phay x akhat = phaykhat, 100 x kanei = 200 (phaynei), 100 x kathumh =300 (phaythumh), 400 = phaypadeih, 500 = phaypanguh, 600 = phaycharuk

(2) Kathaek Sing (Ordinal Numerals)

Kabamv, kathaek lev kariang naina saamei, hymei sing ta **Kathaek Sing** kaw e. Mihei latkaeng swna nic hy e, kasing lev latkaeng kariuna nic hy e.

Latkamv :-

reymei	= 1mei
kaneimei	= 2mei
aruhmei	= 10mei
achuihmei	= 20mei
phaymei	= 100mei

Kamei reymei position khou pass sw the.
Zianthayliu lauluang pakmei khou position 100mei khou guang e.

(3) Kariu Sing (Aggregative Numerals)

Ruanglat khou kasing saa kariumei, chak kariumei ta **Kariu Sing** twna kaw e. Mitei *kaguayna, kapwmna, -meina, -mei* twmei latkaeng guay hei haaplouna saa e.

Latkamv :-

Ntumei *kaguayna* now hamh e.
Meic *kapwmna* thay khang kage nai e.
Nangney gaanv *neimeina* ta kagit pwni.
Guaih *kathumhmei* zayguang ngam o.

(4) Kiaklei Sing (Fractional Numerals)

Ruanglat khou kapwm khourui kakiak kalei patna kadam, kachaengc chakmei latkaeng ta **Kiaklei Sing** twna kaw e. Kiaklei Sing hei saa khou kasing tei saapat nimei hu khou ***patmei khou*** hamhethei ***khou*** sinsw e.

Latkamv :-

kadam aruh *patmei khou* akhat (1/10), kadam aruh *khou* akhat
kasing tachat *patmei khou* panguh (5/8), kasing tachat *khou* panguh
kanei *patmei khou* akhat (1/2), kanei *khou* akhat

(5) Liang Sing (Multiplicative Numerals)

Ruanglat singchak khou taanc dat dat, saa dat dat, pac dat dat twmei ti hei chak khang **liang** hei sinsw e. Aniw rui *taanc liang kathumh, saa liang padeih* twna saa e. Kumna mi tihei **Liang Sing** twna kaw e. Mi hei English khou *times* lev nchamc e. Liang hei kasing hu khou saa e. Kasing nthanna thaymei kapang, kakang, kanunc ta saa khou thu liang phaan tei ***pang, kang, nunc*** hei haaplouna saa e.

Latkamv :-

aruh aruh pac *liang* panguh	=	10 x *liang* 5
suc kathumh kathumh *pang* kathumh	=	3 x *liang* 3
nkuai padeih padeih *kang* kanei	=	4 x *liang* 2
aruh dou doumei suc *nunc* kanei	=	10 x *liang* 2

Kagei Sing (Approximative numerals)

Kasing nthanna thay makmei, tihkic kagei thu thay rahraana saa nuhmei sing ta **Kagei Sing** kaw e. Mi kumhmei sing ta saa khou kasing tangv tei ***gei, dou, dougei, mbu*** twna saa e.

Latkamv :-

Kasing tei ningtow makkhe, tihkic 150 *gei* khou e.
Haubungc aruh *dou* karaana tu ngam kan de.
Laupuk khou guaih aruh *dougei* pat re.
Sibai meic phaykhat *mbu* guang e.

KATHAIDWAN - 10

1. Gender tabui ta cho ? Ruanglat khou gender zaat azuh nai cho. Kazanc hy o.
2. Ruanglat khou Masculine Gender khou tabui tabui suffix swlou tu cho? Hy o.
3. Ruanglat khou Feminine Gender khou tabui tabui suffix swlou cho? Hy o.
4. Ruanglat khou Number azuh nai cho ? Hyna dinc o khatnic latkamv kathumh kathumh hyna nchin o.
5. Gaatmei twn Number (singular, plural, dual) hylou o.

   ai _____ aniu _____

   kaney _____ kaniw guay._____

   guak _____ sucnunc guay _____

   Thingbang _____ thingbang guay _____
6. Gaatmei twn Gender (masculine, feminine, neuter) hylou o.

   kakui _____; kanay _____; kaluh _____;

   chaphwmmei khangc_____ ; gaanv _____;

   guakluh _____; pouh _____;
7. Ruanglat khou kasing akumhna saa cho, hy cho? Latkamv khat khat hy o.

   (a) Kasing sing .....

   (b) Kathaek sing .....

   (c) Kagei sing .....

   (d) Kiaklei sing .....

   (e) Kariu sing .....

   (f) Liang sing .....

3.1.3 MEIC (Person)

Ruanglat khou **Person (Meic)** hei kathumh nai e. Mi guay kiu thu First Person (Reymei Mei), Second Person (Kaneimei Mei) khatnic Third Person (Kathumhmei Mei).

(1) First Person (Reymei Mei)

Khat Sing khou	-	ai,
Kanei Sing khou	-	aney,
Geih Sing khou	-	aniw, aniu

(2) Second Person (Kaneimei Mei)

Khat Sing khou	-	nang,
Kanei Sing khou	-	nangney,
Geih Sing khou	-	nangniw,

(3) Third Person (Kathumhmei Mei)

Khat Sing khou	-	kamei,
Kanei Sing khou	-	kaney,
Geih Sing khou	-	kaniw

3.1.4 CASE

Case tabui cho ? Case twmei hei noun, pronoun lev verb kak khou **alamv bammei lwnlung** tatei e.

Kamei hypei rui tatdyn hy e. Mi latrian khouhei 'hy e' hei verb e. Thow rui hy cho Thanv ethei 'kamei' twna daw pwni. Tabui hy tuang cho thanv ethei 'tatdyn' twna daw pwni. Tabui rui hy tuang cho thanv ethei 'hypei rui' twna daw pwni. Kumna 'hy e' twmei verb lev kamei, tatdyn, hypei twmei noun, pronoun guay hei lev kariang khat nai bam e. Mi kumhmei alamvmei lwnlung ti hei grammar khou CASE kaw e.

Latrian lungc khou tei Noun hamhethei Pronoun lev Verb kak khou alamvmei lwnlung naimei tatei Case kaw e.

Case kazaat azuh nai cho, zauc kho.

(1) Agentive Case:

Agentive Case tabui tei cho ? Mi hei thay gay khang kabangc khou tiiloumei latrian guay hei zauc kho.

Latrian	*Thanvmei*	*Dawmei*
Ai rui mitei hy tuang e.	Thow rui hy tuang cho ?	Ai rui
Kata thay ny zauc o.	Thow rui zauh khang ?	Nang rui (Limhmei)
Kabi rui mitei gay mec twna saa e.	Thow rui saa ?	Kabi rui
Kamei gaypui mei e.	Thow cho gaypui mei ?	Kamei

Tiiloubammei latrian guay khouhei thow rui verb zamh taanv guay tei taancpat tuang cho thanv pwkhou latdaw swna ai, nang, Kabi, kamei twmei noun guay, pronoun guay hei kachak pat re. Mi guay hei verb zamh subject raana e. Mi kumcna latdaw swna kachakpatmei noun khatnic pronoun zamh case ta Agentive Case kaw e.

Thow rui verb zamh taanv taancpat tu cho twna thanv pwkhou latdaw swna kachakpatmei Verb zamh subject swbammei noun hamhethei pronoun zamh case ta Agentive Case kaw e.

Hamhethei,

Noun hamhethei pronoun ta verb zamh subject swna piu ethei mi tei Agentive Case e twna thay e.

Agentive Case khou noun, pronoun tangv rui subject guang e, *rui* phaan *tei, tei rui, thu, mu, nic* guangmei nai e, ramh khatsinic guangmakmei nic nai nuh e.

(2) Objective Case

Objective Case tabui tei cho ? Mihei thay gay khang kabangc khou hyloumei latrian guay hei zauc kho.

Latrian	*Thanvmei*	*Dawmei*
(a) Lanzaipou ta kaw o.	Thow ta kaw o tu bo ?	Lanzaipou ta
(b) Ai kamei ta thay e.	Thow ta thay bo?	Kamei ta
(c) Hypei tei tii o.	Tabui tii o tu bo ?	Hypei tei
(d) Ai alauc ta nap titu e.	Thow ta titu cho ? Tabui titu cho ?	alauc ta nap

Karuc khou latrian guay khouhei verb rui saatow bammei hei thow ta cho, tabui ta cho, twna thanv pwkhou latrian guay khouhei rui noun hamhethei pronoun khat kachakpat re. Kachakpat bammei noun hamhethei pronoun tatei transitive verb zamh object kaw e, kumna mikumhmei object sw bammei noun khatnic pronoun zamh case ta Objective Case twna kaw e.

Transitive verb zamh object twmei thu verb rui tithay bammei tei thow ta cho, tabui ta cho thanv pwkhou dawmei latkaeng kachakpatmei noun hamhethei pronoun zamh case ta Objective Case kaw e.

Hamhethei,

Noun hamhethei pronoun ta verb zamh object swna piu ethei mi tei Objective Case (hamhethei Accusative Case) twna thay e.

Objective Case zamh object swmei noun, pronoun tangv - ta, tei guang e baihmei - mu, thu nic guang nuh e.

(3) Instrumental Case:

Instrumental Case tabui ta cho? Thay gay khang kabangc khou hyloumei latrian hei zauc kho.

(a) Kamei katan rui tat re.

(b) Gaylaapou baeng rui thing dow e.

(c) Dymreyliu mpinh rui phey hui e.

Mi latrian guay khou hei katan rui, baeng rui, mpinh rui twmei latkaeng guay hei verb rui tithaymei taanv taancpatmei khou naatnu, baansin swna sinsw e.

Baansin swna, naatnu swna sinswmei noun, pronoun zamh case ta Instrumental Case kaw e.

Instrumental Case khou baansin, naatnu swna piumei noun, pronoun tangv 'rui' guang e.

(4) Dative Case:

Dative Case tabui ta cho ? Mi hei thay gay khang kabangc khou tiiloumei latrian guay hei zauc kho.

Latrian	Thanvmei	Dawmei	Thow laatow
(a) Ai Kailaagai khou hypei tii e.	Thow khou tii ?	Kailaagai khou	Kailaagai
(b) Mi tei Azin khou saa o.	Thow khou saa khang?	Azin khou	Azin
(c) Ai kakhou syan tii e.	Thow khou tii ?	kakhou	kamei
(d) Tatdyn tei Kasangay khou tii kan e.	Thow khou tiilou kan ?	Kasangay khou	Kasangay

Tiilou bammei latrian guay khatnic thanvmei, dawmei khourui thaymei hei verb rui taanpatmei taanv hei ramh khat tiipatmei kabac khat ndauh e - meic tei thow khou cho twna thanv pwkhou - Kailaagay khou, Azin khou, kakhou, Kasangay khou twna dawmei hei kachakpat re. Khou rui - tii bammei ramh khat/puatc guay tei laatow bammei tei Kailaagay, Azin, Kamei, Kasangay - hei e. Mi kumhmei noun, pronoun ta Dative Case khou bam e twna thay e.

Verb rui ramh khat tiimei kabac ndauhpatmei khou laatow bammei noun khatnic pronoun zamh case ta Dative Case kaw e.

Dative Case zamh noun, pronoun tangv 'khou' guang e.

Latkamv:-

Kailaagay khou, Azin khou, kakhou, Kasangay khou - mikumhmei hei e.

(5) Ablative Case:

Ablative Case tabui tei cho ? Kabangc khou hyloumei latrian guay hei zauc lana kathai kho.

Latrian	Thanvmei	Dawmei
(a) Ai puatc tei kai thangc rui phungc guang tuang e.	Puatc tei tabui thangc rui phung guang bo ?	Kai khou rui
(b) Ai kakhou rui syan mphang e.	Syan tei thow khou rui tiipat/tatpat?	Kakhou rui
(c) Guloupou rui hypei tei kakai thu rui laaguang e.	hypei tei tabui thangc rui?	Kakai khou rui
(d) Kadailiu rui kapammei khou rui phei laa e.	Phey tei thow khou rui?	kapammei khou rui

Latrian guay khou hei - thanvmei, dawmei guay hei zauc pwkhou thaymei tho - kai khourui, kakhourui, kakai khourui, kapammei khourui twmei noun, pronoun guay khourui puat tatpatmei/tiipatmei zamh bamv dinc e. Mi kumhmei noun, pronoun ta Ablative Case khou bammei twna thay e.

Ramh khat tatpat kanmei/tiipat kanmei bamv dinhmei noun and pronoun zamh case to Ablative Case kaw e.

Ablative Case zamh noun & pronoun tangv ***'khourui, thangcrui,*** guang e.

Latkamv: -

kai khourui, namv thangcrui - mikumhmei hei e.

(6) Genetive Case

Genetive Case tabui ta cho ? Kabangc khou latrian guay hei zaucna kathai kho.

(a) Mi tei atuang phey e.
(b) Mi hei nang tuang latrik ge.
(c) Mi hei katuang syan e.
(d) Syan zamh gunc thu meic guayna thay e.
(e) Lata zamh nuhgaymei khwan tei nking nii e.
(f) Tingsei zamh nchumei tei akhang thu gay e.

Karuc khou latrian guay khouhei 'atuang, nang tuang, katuang, zamh' - twmei guay hei kaipouc dinhmei latkaeng raana e. Mi kumhmei noun khatnic pronoun ta Genetive Case khou bammei twna kaw e.

Ramh akhat zamh kaipouc thaymei noun khatnic pronoun zamh case ta Genetive Case kaw e.

Genetive Case zamh noun khatnic pronoun tangv 'tuang, zamh' guang e.

Genetive Case khou bammei noun zamh noun hei khwangwan kalaih e - tone shift sw e.

(a) Genetive case khou **glottalised tone** hei **rising tone** khou kalaih e.

Chah hei **chac** twna khwangwan shift sw e.
Chini **chac** zangv e. Chahnuy **chac** zangvgay e.
Nriangcluangcmei **chac** zangvgay chuy e.

Zouh hei **zouc** twna khwangwan kalaih e.
Napnaeng **zouc** zangvgay e.
Martha kai **zouc** ndeih e.

(b) Genetive case khou **rising tone** hei **level tone** khou kalaih e.

Zouc hei **zou** twna khwangwan kalaih e.

Khow**zou** meic ta ndev e.

Laulaih **zou** nrak ge.

Suc hei **su** twna khwangwan kalaih e.

Kaidaeng **su** nrak ge.

Khowraamv **su** kangaengv nraeng e.

(c) Noun khou bammei glottalised tone guay adjective hamhethei verb ngguanh pwkhou rising tone khou kalaih e.

Kai **daih**mei hei **daic** e.

Nap **geih**mei hei **geic** e.

Taanv **taanhmei** nunc **taanc** e.

Puatc **phunghmei** nunc rui **phungc** e.

(d) Prefix swna **ram** khatnic **karam** haaplouna noun hamhethei adjective ngguanh pwkhou tone kaguayna level tone khou raana kalaih e.

daihmei hei **ram<u>dai</u>** twna khwangwan kalaih e.

Mi guak **ramdai** kumhmei ai howlou mak ge.

suhmei hei **ram<u>su</u>** twna khwangwan kalaih e.

Mai chuapmei **ramsu** khaengvlou khang thay mak ge.

zow hei **ram<u>zou</u>** twna khwangwan kalaih e.

Dui **ram<u>zou</u>** nthaek zat mak ge.

geihmei hei **karam<u>gei</u>** twna khwangwan kalaih e.

Karam<u>gei</u> tei saa ngam mak ge.

daihmei hei **karam<u>dai</u>** twna khwangwan kalaih e.

Karam<u>dai</u> tei kachav simei ramdai kumc e.

zow hei **karam<u>zou</u>** twna khwangwan kalaih e.

Karam<u>zou</u> tei zow katumc hak ge.

(7) Locative Case

Locative Case tabui ta cho ?

Kabangc khou latrian asaekc tiiloumei hei zaucna kathai kho.

(a) Ai school tho tat pwni.

(b) Paeng ruc khou hypei nai e.

(c) Phey tei khuk khou lou o.

(d) Ai khuangh khat khou guang pwni.

Latrian guay khou naimei school khou, ruc khou, khuk khou, twmei hei rui verb rui taancpatmei taanv bamv tei ndauh e. 'khat khou' twmei rui kaganv ta ndauh e. Mi kumhmei noun khatnic pronoun ta Locative Case khou bammei kaw e.

Verb rui taancpatmei taanv bamv, kaganv ndauhmei noun khatnic pronoun zamh case ta Locative Case kaw e.

Locative Case zamh noun khatnic pronoun tangv ***'khou, tho, twn'***guang e.

(8) Vocative Case

Vocative Case tabui cho ?

Mihei kathai gay khang kabangc khou latrian asaekc hylou e. Mihei zauc rey kho.

(a) Apouc le, tabui tho tat khang cho?

(b) Abungna tei, khou hei guang o.

(c) Apuai, nkhwan o.

(d) Alauc nunc thiu, saasi riu.

(e) Alu nunc thiu, dungckey o, dungckey o.

(f) Apulauc, bamv khoutei dungckey o.

Karuc khou latrian guay khouhei 'apouc, abungna, apuai, alauc nunc, alu nunc, apulauc, - twmei latkaeng guay hei 'kawmei' thaymei latkaeng raana e. Mikumhmei noun khatnic pronoun ta Vocative Case khou bammei kaw e.

Khat rui khat ta 'kawmei' ta thaymei noun khatnic pronoun zamh case ta Vocative Case kaw e.

Kumna karuc khou kathai keymei guay khourui thay the - mikiu thu Ruanglat khou case tachat nai e. Mi case tachat zanc tei kabangc khou hylou e.

Case zanc	*Case tangv guangmei latkaeng/suffix*
(1) Agentive case	rui
(2) Objective case	ta, tei
(3) Instrumental case	rui
(4) Dative case	khou
(5) Ablative case	khourui
(6) Genetive case	tuang, zamh
(7) Locative case	tho, thangc, khou
(8) Vocative case	le, thiu, tei

KATHAIDWAN - 11

1. Case tabui ta cho ? Case kazaat azuh nai cho ? Kazanc guay hy o.

2. Gaatmei twn hylou o.

   (a) Latrian lungc khou noun hamhethei pronoun lev verb kak khou _____ lwnlung tatei case kaw e.

   (b) Noun hamhethei pronoun ta verb zamh subject swna piu ethei mi ta tei _____ khou bammei twna thay e.

   (c) Noun hamhethei pronoun ta verb zamh object swna piu ethei mi tei _____ khou bammei twna thay e.

3. Instrumental case tabui cho? Latkamv khang latrian kathumh hylana dinc o.

4. Duina daw o.

   (a) Dative case khou noun hamhethei pronoun tangv _____guang e.

   (b) Ablative case khou noun hamhethei pronoun khourui ramh khat tiipat/tatpatmei ta dinc e. Ablative case katangv khou mihei kumcna hy e.
   tho / khou / ta / khourui

(c) Ramh akhat zamh kaipouc thaymei noun khatnic pronoun zamh case ta _____ kaw e.

5. Tabui tabui tei cho ? Duina hysuak pat ro.

(a) Locative Case.....

(b) Vocative Case.....

3.2.0 VERB KIK (Verbal Categories)

3.2.1 Ganv (Tense) - Ganv Theilayna Lat saamei

Lat kathaimei khou **ganv** hei nthukmei khat re. Kaganv theilayna aniw lat hei kalaihpat-gut re. Latrian khat saapat pwkhou kaganv lev kariang nai e.

Tense twmei hei Latinlat **tempus** twmei khourui e, kabah thu **ganv** (time) twtuang e. Grammar khou tense kathaimei hei kaganv ta kathai tuang hamh e, kaganv theilayna lat akumhna saa cho twmei kathai tuang e. Kumna kaganv lev kariang naina lat kathaimei **'ganv'** tatei grammar khou **tense** kaw e.

Mi **ganv** lev **lat** hei kabangc khou hyloumei kumcna zauc nuh e.

Kamei minute panguh **hu** khou guanglou khwan e,

ntaw kamei bam mak ge, minute panguh **tangv** guang dat pwni.

Ntaw **hu**	**Ntaw**	Ntaw **tangv**
minute 5	**O**	minute 5
tatkan ganv	**ntaw ganv**	**guangni ganv**
(past time)	*(present time)*	*(future time)*

Ntaw twn hei ding lana ntaw **hu**, **ntaw** khatnic ntaw **tangv** lat guay tei aniw rui saa e.

Kumna karuc khou hei ganv zaat kathumh how e - ntaw, ntaw hu, ntaw tangv. Mi ganv guay tihei grammar khou tense kaw e. English Grammar khou ganv hei **verb** swna nai e. Ruanglat khou thu verb tangv latkaeng baihmei haap guang e.

Ganv hei kazaat kathumh nai e - **ntaw ganv** (present tense), **tatkan ganv** (past tense), khatnic **guangni ganv** (future tense).

Kabangc khou tiiloumei ganv theilayna aniw akumhna lat saa cho twmei zauc kho.

Present Tense (Ntaw Ganv)

Khat Sing	*Kanei Sing*	*Geih Sing*
Ai tu e.	Aney tu e.	Aniw tu e.

Past Tense (Tatkan Ganv)

Khat Sing	*Kanei Sing*	*Geih Sing*
Kamei tu khwan e.	Kaney tu khwan e.	Kaniw tu khwan e.

Future Tense (Guangni Ganv)

Nang tu pwni e.	Nangney tu pwni e.	Nangniw tu pwni e.
Ai tu lak ge.	Kamei tu pwlak ge.	Kaniw tu pwlak ge.

Englishlat khou tense rui verb ta kalwn tikalaicpat-gut re. English latrian khou Third Person Singular Number rui subject sw ethei verb lwn kalaih e. Karuc khou tense kathaimei khouhei aniw rui thay e twmei thu Ruanglat khou tense khatnic person rui verb **'tu'** tihei kalwn tikalaih mak ge,**'tu'** hei **'tu'** muay bam e. Tihkic, ***e* hei *khwan e, pwni e, pwlak ge*** rui lyn e.

Mi khourui aniw thay e twmei thu tense khou Ruanglat hei main verb **'tu'** kalaih mak ge, **'e'** nic kalaih mak ge, tihkic latkaeng baihmei khat khat **'khwan'** hei past tense, khatnic **'pwni, pwlak,'** hei future tense khou sinsw e.

Tense tihei **simple, continuous, perfect, perfect continuous** twna English grammar khou kathai e.

KATHAIDWAN -12

1. Tense(ganv) tabui ta cho? Tense kazaat azuh nai cho?
2. Kabangc khou tiiloumei tense guay hei sinswna nang rui kahawmei latrian khat khat hy lana nchin o.
   (a) Present Tense .....
   (b) Past Tense .....
   (c) Future Tense .....
3. Tatkan Ganv tabui ta cho? Tatkan Ganv ta tabui latkaeng rui tithay cho?

4. Guangni Ganv tabui ta cho? Tabui latkaeng rui Guangni Ganv ta tithay cho?

5. Tense(ganv) tihei English Grammar khou padeih tipatna kathai e. Tabui tabui tei cho ?

3.2.2 ASPECT

Kalwnlung ncham guangmei grammar khou **aspect** twmei verb lwnlung tihei grammar zamh category khat swna kathai mak ge, ganv (tense) lwn dinhmei khou kazauhmei thiak khat swna ning bam khwan e. Aspect tihei reymei khou Germanlat, Russialat khatnic Europeanlat asaekc zamh grammar khou kathai kahouh khwan e. Thaurey douc thu aspect hei verb rui tithaymei kabah tei 'nthuihna ndauh patmei' khatnic 'nthuihna ndauh makmei' , mi kumcna kabiak kanei khou kathaimei ta aspect kaw bam khwan e. Aseicdou thu tidaic patna**tense** khangsuangc **aspect** hei gaeng mbumei grammatical category khat swna ranvna kathai bam e. Kadai swna Tibeto-Burman Language guay khou tense khangsuangc aspect hei kadai sw hian e twna lat kathai kariangmei nunc rui laa e.

Aspect tabui tei cho ?

Tense hei lat lev ganv kariang naina kathaimei verb lwnlung ndauhmei latkaeng tatei e twmei hei tense khatnic tense piumei lam kathai khou thay kan the. **Aspect hei verb lwnlung ta ndauh e.** English lat khou **tense** thei layna verb kalaih e - verb latkaeng kalaih e. Tihkic Ruanglat thu **tense** theilayna verb kalaih mak ge, verb **lwn-gwan** theilayna latkaeng asaekc haap nkuan guang e. Kumna ramh khat, taanv khat sw **e,** sw **the,** sw **bam e,** sw **pwni** twmei **verb zamh lwn-gwan tatei Aspect kaw e.**

Tense kathaimei khou ganv kathumh - **ntaw ganv, tatkan ganv** khatnic **guangni ganv** twna tipat re. Verb khat rui taancpatmei taanv zauc pwkhou taanv tei taancpat khou gutmei ganv khat nai e. Taanv tei taancpat bammei ganv lungc khou taanv tei akumhna taancpat cho twmei dinhmei tatei mi verb zamh **aspect** kaw e. **Kumna aspect hei tabui cho twmei ding khang tense kathumh hei lev kariang maek ge, tihkic verb taanv tei tabui lwn-gwan khou sw bam tu cho twmei tei e. Duina saa pwkhou Aspect hei tho verb rui taancpatmei taanv khou ndauhpat bammei lwn-gwan tei e.** Aspect hei

ramhkhat sw patmei lwn tei ramhkhat swpatmei ganvdyng tei lev kariang nai nic nuh e, maek nic nuh e.

Kabangc khou latrian guay hei zauc kho.

(a) Neihmik neihpat tho pat re.

(b) Kamei guang the.

(c) Sikamliu latrik pac bam e.

(d) Kamei Delhi tat pwni.

(a) latrian khou 'pat re' twmei verb hei rui Neih taanv hei tingmik pum patmei taanv e twmei ndauh e. Kumna 'pat re' twmei verb zamh aspect hei **tingmik pum patmei chalahmei aspect** ge.

(b) latrian khou 'guang the' twmei verb hei rui kamei guangmei taanv tei nthuihna taanc kan the twmei hei ndauh e, kumna mi verb zamh aspect hei **taanv nthuih kanmei aspect** ge.

(c) latrian khou 'pac bam e' twmei verb hei rui Sikamliu rui pahmei taanv hei tatkey bam e twmei ndauh e, kumna mi hei nthuih khang gaatmei, **tatkey bammei aspect** ge.

(d) latrian khou 'tat pwni' hei ntaw khang swna taancpat makmei, katangv khou taancpat pwnimei ta ndauh e. Kumna mihei taancpat changh makmei,**taancpat pwnimei aspect** ge.

Karuc khou latrian padeih khou hei aspect lwnlung tei zauc kho.

Latrian	*Aspect*	*Aspect lwnlung (verb zamh kabah)*
Neihmik neihpat tho pat re.	Simple Aspect	Chalahmei, kalwnlung swmei
Sikamliu latrik pac bam e	Progressive Aspect	Tatkey bammei, luai makmei
Kamei guang the	Perfect Aspect	Nthuih kanmei
Aniu nthuanh Delhi tat pwni.	Unrealised Aspect	Taancpat makmei, pwnimei

Karuc khou tiiloumei latkamv padeih khouheirui thaymei tho aspect hei tabui cho twmei hei verb lwn-gwan khou zauc lana ding tuang e twmei hei e.

ASPECT ZAAT

Ruanglat khou verb lwnlung hei latkaeng khat kanei kariuna ndauh e. Mi kumhmei haap nkuan guangmei latkaeng tihei aspect twna thay e. Ruanglat khou kabi swmei aspect padeih nai e. Mi guay tei kabangc khou hylou e.

(1) Simple Aspect

Mi hei chalahna, kanaamv swmei, khatnic kalwnlung khang nchumhmei latrian khat swna saapatmei latbamv ta e. Mi kumhmei tihei Simple Aspect kaw e.

Latkamv :-

(a) Neihpat tho neih pat **re.**

(b) Niangzay khwan ta nzian **e.**

(c) Tignzinthw tingzyn chaeng rah **e.**

Simple Aspect latrian hei **'e'** rui luailou e.

(2) Progressive Aspect

Taancna bammei, tatkey bammei kabac ndauhmei verb lwnlung ta Progressive Aspect twna kaw e.

Latkamv -

(a) Kamei latrik pac **bam e.**

(b) Thingtwan thu ngauh sauc **bam e.**

(c) Mazahsinpou zip **bam di he.**

Progressive Aspect latrian hei **bam e, bam di he** rui luailou e.

(3) Perfect Aspect:

Kaganv asaekc hu thangc rui nthuih lana ntaw nganv mitei nai bammei kabac ndauhmei verb zamh aspect ta Perfect Aspect kaw e.

Latkamv:-

(a) Kamei film tei zauc **the.**

(b) Alauc tei parikha pass sw **the.**

(c) Kalat tei ai thay **the.**

Perfect Aspect latrian hei **'the'** rui luailou e.

(4) Unrealized Aspect

Kaganv asaekc tangv pat nimei, sw nimei, guang nimei ta **Unrealised Aspect** twna thay e.

(a) Kamei Nggaanh Ngai khou guang **pwni.**
(b) Aniu nthuanh Delhi tat **pwni.**
(c) Neidak khat tangv result saapat **pwni.**

Unrealised Aspect latrian hei **'pwni'** rui luailou e.

KATHAIDWAN - 13

1. Aspect twmei hei tabui cho? Aspect lev tense khiannahmei tabui tabui tei cho?
2. Aspect zaat azuh nai cho? Kazaat guay zanc khat khat swna hy o.
3. 'Tat' verb hei sinswna Simple Aspect, Perfect Aspect Progressive Aspect, khatnic Unrealized Aspect latrian khat khat hy o.
4. Kabangc khou latrian guay khou verb guay khouhei tabui tabui Aspect nai cho? Hyna dinc o.
   (a) Nang doulaaneic guangmei ganv khoutei thu ai taanv taanc chadi bam heh.
   (b) Kamei tingmik pum nchamkai tat re.
   (c) Nang lat tei ai thay the.
   (d) Kamei adaeng khou nthuanh guang pwni.
   (e) Alauc tei khuangh nei taliclou khwan e.

3.2.3 KWM (Mood)

Mood hei Latinlat **modus** twmei khourui e. Kabah thu kathiak twtuang e. Grammar khou verb rui tithay patmei action kazauhmei lungning rui ningmei, ndauhpatmei kathiak kagwan (mode or manner) tatei **Mood** kaw e.

English Grammar khou Mood zaat kathumh nai e. - Indicative Mood, Imperative Mood khatnic Subjunctive Mood - mi guay hei e.

Ruanglat khou Mood hei kazaat panguh nai e. Mi guay kiu thu -

(1) Thanvmei Mood,

(2) Thouhmei khatnic Zaenghuaymei Mood,

(3) Lungning rui Kahawmei Ndauhmei Mood,

(4) Kage Naimei Swmak Nuhmakmei Mood,

(5) Suai pwlak ge, sw pwng de twna ndauhmei Mood.

(1) Thanvmei Mood

Latthanv khat lungc khou lungning rui kahawmei tei kaphumhlouna thanvmei lattahnv guay ta **Thanvmei Mood** kaw e.

Latkamv: -

(a) Ding kadailou nuh pwni ny ? (Ding kadaimei ta kahawna saamei)

(b) Dungckeyloumei gay pwni ny ? (Dungckeymei ta kahawna saamei)

(c) Phey hei laa khang nuh tha ? (Phey tei kahawna saamei)

(d) Nap hei tuthau nuh tha ? (Nap tuthau niina saamei)

(2) Thouhmei khatnic Zaenghuaymei Mood

Lat thouhmei, taanv thouhmei, chakhuang swna saamei khatnic meic baihmei ta zaenghuayna saamei verb zamh mood ta **Thouhmei khatnic Zaenghuaymei Mood** kaw e.

Latkamv: -

(a) Thingkhuk hei kakhaeng o.

(b) Gut maihna dungc o.

(c) Bamv khou guang dungclou o.

(d) Zouhbuangc hei puanclou o.

(3) Lungning rui Kahawmei Ndauhmei Mood

Suaihiamloumei, meic khat ta gay kan diuc, sii kan diuc, ryanraa kandiuc, amanv kan diuc twna ningna ndauhpatmei verb zamh mood tatei **Lungning rui Kahawmei Ndauhmei Mood** kaw e.

Latkamv:-

(a) Ravguangc rui nang ta nduanghlou diuc o.

(b) Aseic khourui neihlaana lungc tho de.

(c) Nang mu theic nuangc theic zaic pwng e .

(d) Ai aseic kata ariu nii e.
(e) Mitei gay pwng the twna ning e.

(4) Kage naimei, Swmak Nuhmakmei Ndauhmei Mood

Swmak nuhmak khe, kage rap di the twna ningna ndauhmei khou sinswmei verb zamh mood ta **Kage naimei, Swmak Nuhmakmei Ndauhmei Mood** kaw e.

Latkamv :-

(a) Aseic nang kai guangtangh mak nuh mak khe.
(b) Mi lam tei nang thay nthan khang sw nina the.
(c) Parikha tei nang kazauh mak nuh mak ge.
(d) Lungcgay me ning ethei taanv taanc ranv nina e.
(e) Nang kata nthuanh ariu nina e.

(5) Makumhgaymei Mood

Suai ni tu hamh e, sw pwng de, kum pwng e twna ningmei ndauhmei verb zamh mood tatei **Makumhgaymei Mood** kaw e.

Latkamv :-

(a) Mareihbwan aseic guang pwng the.
(b) Kabigay parikha pass sw pwng de.
(c) Aseic mian tho nang zawpaw pwng the.
(d) Bw luai pwkhou syan mphang pwng e.
(e) Kamei latpiumei nac sw pwni twmei ai lwmgay e.

KATHAIDWAN - 14

1. Mood twmei hei tabui ta cho ? Kabah tabui cho ?
2. English Grammar khou Mood zaat azuh nai cho ? Tabui tabui tei cho ?
3. Ruanglat Grammar khou Mood zaat azuh nai cho ? Tabui tabui tei cho ?
4. Kabangc khou tiiloumei latrian guay hei tabui tabui Mood khou cho ?
   (a) Ding kadailou nuh pwni bo ? _____
   (b) Thingkhuk hei kakhaeng o. _____
   (c) Ravguangc rui nang ta nduanghlou diuc o. _____
   (d) Nang kata nthuanh ariu nina e. _____
   (e) Mareihbwan aseic guang pwng the. _____

CHADAADWAN

(Test-3)

1. Morphology tabui ta cho? Morphology kathaimei khou tabui tabui tei kadaiswmei cho?
2. Gender (Kuidui) hei tabui ta cho? Gender zaat azuh nai cho? Tabui tabui tei cho?
3. Person (Meic) tabui ta cho? Ruanglat khou person azuh nai cho? Tabui tabui tei cho?
4. Grammar khou case hei tabui ta cho? Case zaat azuh nai cho? Tabui tabui tei cho?
5. Ganv (Tense) tabui ta cho? Ganv zaat azuh nai cho?
6. Kabangc khou tiiloumei tense guay hei sinswna nang rui kahawmei latrian khat khat hy lana lyan o.
   (a) Present Tense .....
   (b) Past Tense .....
   (c) Future Tense .....
7. Aspect tabui ta cho? Aspect zaat azuh nai cho? Kazanc guay hy o.
8. Ganv (Tense) lev aspect akumhna khiannah tu cho? Saa o.
9. Mood tabui ta cho? Mood zaat azuh nai cho? Tabui tabui tei cho?

3.3.0 LATSAV NAATNU

Word Class - Parts of Speech

Parts of Speech tabui ta cho?

Latsav tihei **Speech** twna thay e. Latsav latrian khat khou nthukmei langv tei subject lev predicate sw lana latkaeng azuh haap nkuan lana latrian tihei tisaengcpat re, kumna latsav khou latkaeng guay hei kataanv khat khat taanc bam e. Latkaeng guay heirui taanc bammei taanv khatnic kabah ta zauc lana latkaeng guay ta kakang kakang tibaicpat re. Mi kang tihei **Latsav Naatnu** (***Parts of Speech***) twna kaw e. Parts of Speech zanc hei kabah khou khatnic latkaeng rui taanc bammei taanv thei layna phuaklou tuang e. Mihei kalwnlung swna tatguang the.

Lat khat zamh latriak (grammar) dinh khangrui latsav naatnu zanc guay hei phuaklou tuang e. Kumhpui zaengrui latkaeng zanc guay hei nchamc raph mak sihnic nuh de. Ntaw hei reynungcrui saaguangmei lwan khouhei Ruanglat khou *latsav naatnu* - parts of speech tachat nai muay e. Mi guay tei kabangc khou hylou e.

(1) noun
(2) pronoun
(3) adjective
(4) verb
(5) adverb
(6) postposition
(7) conjunction
(8) interjection

Mi guay tei tabui tabui cho khat tangv khat swna zauc kho.

(1) Noun tabui ta cho?

Tiiloumei latrian guay hei zauc kho.

(a) **Imphal Manipur** kaidai e.
(b) **Gaylaa** aseic guang pwni.

(c) **Nruay kang** khat samc bam e.

(d) **Dui** hei aniw khang ringhtaek ge.

(e) **Nchumhmei** rui zawgay pwni.

Tiilou bammei latrian khou hei kabah khou nchamcmei latkaeng asaekc kazauh e. *Imphal, Manipur* ramv zanc e, *kaidai* kabamv zanc e, *Gaylaa* meic khat zanc e, *aseic* kaganv zanc e, *nruay* khouringh zanc e, *kang* kapang zanc e, *dui* puatc zanc e, *ringhtaek* tu zangvmei puatc khat zanc e, *nchumhmei* gunh khat zanc e. Heickumna zanh swna thaymei latkaeng azuh lat khou nai e. **Zanh swna thaymei latkaeng kaguayna ta kawmei zanc khat grammar khou phuaklou e. Mi kumhmei latkaeng guay ti hei Noun twna kaw e.**

Latkamv khang :-

Imphal, Gaylaa, kang, nchumhmei - mi kumhmei guay hei e.

(2) Pronoun tabui ta cho?

Latrian asaekc zauc dat lana mi guay tatei kariuna zanh phuak nuhmei latkaeng guay phu kho.

(a) Gaylaa aseic guang pwni, doulaaneic thu **kamei** guang mak khe.

(b) Alu Zauzianliu, **nang** tabui thangc tat khang ?

(c) Pulauc, **ai** school ku tat khang e.

Latrian guay hei zauc pwkhou '**Kamei** guang mak ge' twmeihei '**Gaylaa** guang mak ge' twtuang e. Mi khouhei **kamei** twmei latkaeng heirui **Gaylaa** twmei latkaeng phaan sinsw e. **Zauzianliu** twmei latkaeng phaan **nang, ai** sinsw e. Kumna zanh ta thaymei latkaeng tei saa han dat datna saamei phaan latkaeng baihmei azuh sinsw e. Zanh ta thaymei latkaeng ta noun twna kaw kan the. Ntaw saa bammei latkaeng guay hei thu zanh phaan lynmei - noun phaan lynmei latkaeng e, ***kumna noun phaan lynmei latkaeng guay ta thaymei zanc ta grammar khou*** Pronoun ***twna thay e.***

Kumna noun phaan lynna sinswmei latkaeng tatei Pronoun kaw e.

Latkamv khang :-

kamei, nang, ai, aniw, nangniw, kaniw, mi, mi kumhmei guay hei pronoun raana the.

(3) Verb tabui ta cho?

Latrian asaekc zauc dat kho.

(a) Kamei tat kan the.
(b) Gaybwan latrik phungcguang e.
(c) Gaynailiu phey dak ge.
(d) Maibungc khat paeng ruckhou nai e.
(e) Alauc tei kap be.

Latrian guay hei lev kariang naina kabangc khou thanvmei dawmei guay hei zauc kho.

	Thanvmei	*Dawmei*
(a)	Kamei tabui sw cho?	tat kan the.
(b)	Gaybwan tabui sw cho?	phungcguang e.
(c)	Gaynailiu tabui sw cho?	(phey) dak ge.
(d)	Maibungc akumh bo?	nai e.
(e)	Alauc tei tabui sw bo?	kap be.

Heickumna latrian kathuih zauc pwkhou noun, pronoun rui taanhmei, swmei, bammei, naimei ta thaymei latkaeng khat khat latrian kathuih khou kazauh e. Mi guay tihei grammar khou **verb** twna kaw e.

Taanhmei, swmei, bammei, naimei ta thaymei latkaeng ta Verb kaw e.

Latkamv khang :- ***tat re, bam e, tu e, taanc e,*** mi kumhmei guay hei verb raana the.

(4) Adjective tabui ta cho?

Kabangc khou latrian guay hei zauc lana tiiloumei latthanv guay hei daw khang sw kho.

(a) **Akumhmei** alauc tei kaniw pangc khou gay hian bu cho?
(b) Kamei khav **daihmei** khat liu e.
(c) Nang saa nii bammei tei **tabui** lat cho?
(d) Gaanv **padeih** guang pwni.
(e) **Nkauhmei** bamv tei nang dungc o.

Mi latrian guay khou hei akumhmei, daihmei, khat, tabui, padeih, nkauhmei twmei latkaeng guay hei rui kadaeng khou naimei noun khatnic verb

lwnlung, kagat, kasing kumhmei saapatna kalwn dinc e. Mi guay tihei noun hamhethei pronoun zamh gunc ndauhmei latkaeng twna thay e. Mi kumhmei **noun hamhethei pronoun zamh kagunc ndauhmei latkaeng ta Adjective kaw e.**

Latkamv khang:- ***gaymei, howgaymei, daihmei, nkauhmei*** - mi kumhmei guay hei e.

(5) Adverb tabui ta cho?

Latrian kang khat zauc dat kho.

(a) Meic khat katumcna tat kan e.
(b) Hyloumei maengh tei howgay hak e.
(c) Kamei gari peyna thouc ranv e.
(d) Kamei peyna tanhpui mei e.
(e) Kamei doulaaneic kakai tho tat kan the.

Mi latrian panguh hei thanvna dawna kathai kho.

(a)	Meic tei akumhna tat kan?	katumcna
(b)	Adih howgay bo?	hak
(c)	Gari tei adihkamv thou ranv bo?	peyna
(d)	Kamei adih kamv tanc bo?	peyna
(e)	Kamei tabui nungc tat kan tha?	doulaanei
	Tabui tho?	kakai tho.

Reymei latrian khou 'katumcna' twmei hei rui tat kan e twmei lwnlung ta dinc e. Kaneimei latrian khou 'hak' hei rui 'gaymei' tei adihkamv cho twmei dinc e. Kathumhmei khou 'ranv' hei 'thou' twmei lwnlung e, 'peyna' twmei hei rui 'ranv' gat ta dinc e. Padeihmei latrian khou 'peyna' hei rui 'tanh' twmei hei adihkamv cho twmei dinc e. Panguhmei latrian khou 'doulaaneic' twmei hei rui 'tat kan the' twmei 'kaganv' ta dinc e, 'kakai' twmei hei rui 'tat kan the' twmei 'kabamv' ta tithay e.

Heickumna latkaeng asaekc rui verb rui taancpatmei lwnlung, kaganv, kabamv, adjective zamh kagat tei dinc e. Mi kumcna dinhmei ti hei nic kagunc ndauhmei twna thay e. Mi kumhmei tihei grammar khou Adverb kaw e. Kathumhmei latrian khou 'peyna' twmei hei rui adverb 'ranv' twmei gunc tei ndauh e. Mikumhmei tihei nic adverb twna thay e. Kumna **verb, adjective**

khatnic adverb baihmei khat zamh kagunc ndauhmei latkaeng ta tei Adverb kaw e.

Latkamv:- **Ranv, katumc, nzaeng, nthuanh, kai khou, lau tho** - mi kumhmei guay hei adverb raana the.

(6) Postposition tabui ta cho?

Mi latthanv hei thay khang kabangc khou hyloubammei latrian gauy hei zauc kho.

Ai Imphal **tho** tat re.

Tingkauh **thangc** ariu dat pwng e.

Aniw Luangmai **khou** ariu kho.

Pumh **twn** tei bomb siauckey khwan e.

Aniu duidai **ruc khou** paliam chauna tat re.

Kaniw laupah **lungc khou** zaeng nthaek ge.

Karuc khou latrian guay khouhei Imphal, tingkauh, Luangmai, pumh, duidai, laupah, mi guay hei kabam zanc noun raana e. Mi latkaeng guay tangv hei tho, thangc, khou, twn, ruc khou, lungc khou - latkaeng guay hei noun ta nkhav guang e. Mi kummei **kabam ta thaymei noun tangv guangmei latkaeng guay tihei Postposition kaw e.**

Latkamv khang - daeng (khou), bangc (khou), ta, thei, ruc, laa - mi guay hei postposition raana e.

(Mi kumhmei latkaeng guay hei English khou noun latkaeng hu khou guang e kumtina preposition kaw e. India khou Aryanmei nunc lat khou mi latkaeng zaat hei noun tangv guang e. Ruanglat khou nic mi latkaeng guay hei noun tangv guang e. Kumna mi latkaeng zaat tihei Ruanglat grammar khou Postposition twna kaw e.)

(7) Conjunction Tabui ta cho?

Kabangc khou latrian guay hei zauclana Conjunction tabui tei cho kathaipat kho.

(a) Thiubwan **lev** Dihgup **lev** kaney tat kan the.

(b) Che **khatnic** hypei tii o.

(c) Kaniw dukaanc tat kan e **kumna** latrik khat laa kan e.

(d) Kamei **nic** ai **nic** nchamnac raana e.

(e) Kamei lungcgay e **tihkic** panti e.

Mi latrian guay khouhei 'lev-lev' khatnic, 'nic-nic' hei rui nchamc nchamcmei part of speech hamhethei latkaeng guay ta zay kariulou e, 'kumna, tihkic' hei rui latrian ta zay kariulou e. Mi kumhmei latkaeng guay tihei **Conjunction** kaw e.

Latkaeng lev latkaeng, latrian lev latrian ta zay kariumei latkaeng ta Conjunction kaw e.

Latkam khang:-

Kumna, tihkic, lev-lev, hamhethei, kumetihkic, kum sihnic, kumthena - mi kumhmei hei conjunction the.

(8). Interjection tabui ta cho?

Kabangc khou latrian hei zauc lana karuc khou lathanv hei phupat kho.

Hei ! Akumh khang tha!

Alaih ! Nang dai !

Cha ! Chani e da !

E ! Heic tho tabui !

Mi latrian guay khouhei 'Hei, Alaih, Cha,' - twmei latkaeng guay hei lungning khou kadathdatna patmei verb khat ndauh e. Heickumna charynmei, kaluangmei, pingmei, mphutmei, kadathdatmei ta rah ndauhpatmei latkaeng azuh nai e. Mi guay ta tei grammar khou **interjection** kaw e.

Kumna **lungning khou ruph, paduph twna kahitowmei lungning makum khat saapat raph twmei khou sinswmei latkaeng ta tei Interjection kaw e.**

Kumna latrian khou piu bammei lat hei zauc pwkhou **latsav naatnu** - part of speech tachat nai e. Mi latsav naatnu tachat hei lat kathai khou piu e. Mi guay tei kabangc khou hylou e.

(1) noun
(2) pronoun
(3) adjective
(4) verb
(5) adverb
(6) postposition
(7) conjunction
(8) interjection

KATHAIDWAN - 15

1. Parts of Speech (Latsav Naatnu) tabui ta cho ? Parts of speech hei tabui khang cho ? Parts of speech zanc guay kiu khat khat swna hy o.
2. Noun tabui ta cho ? Latkamv tiina hy o.
3. Pronoun tabui ta cho ? Latkamv tiina hy o.
4. Verb tabui ta cho ? Latkamv tiina hy o.
5. Ruanglat khou Postposition nai e. Mi kiu tabui tei cho ? Latkamv tiina hy o.
6. Kabangc khou tiiloumei latrian hei part of speech swna dinc o.

   Luangchumc khou Atun lungclou khwan e. Kamei hei kapumc peyna gay e kumtina tanc e. Kamei lyantuangh khat re.

3.3.1 NOUN ZAAT

(1) Proper Noun

Kabangc khou tiiloumei latkaeng guay khou hei kazauhmei noun guay zauc kho.

(a) Mi hei **Alangh** thuak ge.

(b) **Imphal Manipur** zamh kaidai e.

(c) Akai guaickui zanc **Buimaapui** kaw e.

(d) **Kasaigay Katutluc** puningc e.

Mi latrian guay khou hei kazauhmei noun pangc khou hei 'Alangh' duithuak khat zanc e, 'Imphal', 'Manipur' khat khatna ta thaymei ramv zanc e, 'Buimaapui' guaihkui khat zanc e. Katutluc meic khat zanc e. Mi kumhmei **kalingphingmei meic, kabamv, puatc zanc ta thaymei noun ta Proper Noun kaw e.**

Latkamv khang :- **Zeihlat, Mikcharung, Delhi, Puiluanh** - mi kumhmei guay hei e.

(2) Common Noun

(a) Mi **hypei** hei thow tuang cho?

(b) **Guaih** khat tat guang e.

(c) **Alauc** khat guang e.

(d) **Chaeng** khou **meic** geicna tat re.

Mi latrian guay khou hei hypei, guaih, alauc, chaeng twmei latkaeng guay hei noun raana e. Hypei twethei hypei guayna tat hay e, guaih twethei guaih kaguayna ta thay e; Alauc, chaeng, meic, mi guay hei nic noun e, khat ta saa pwkhou kaguayna ta thay e. Mi kumhmei **khat ta saa pwkhou kaguayna ta thaymei noun ti hei Common Noun kaw e.**

Latkam khang :- **Latrik, takuanh, phey, pumh, duithuak, laupuk** - mi kumhmei guay hei common noun raana the.

(3) Material Noun

(a) Mi mwn hei **che** rui kasiamh tuang e.

(b) Mi hypei hei **mukdui** maek khe.

(c) **Chah** zangv nii e.

(d) **Ntey** bumc e, **tamtouh** ndeih e.

Tiiloumei latrian khou hei che, mukdui, chah, ntey, tamtouh mi guay hei noun raana e. Mi guay kakiak kakiak swbak sihnic kazanc kalaih mak ge. Puatc baihmei kasiamh khang nuhmei puat raana e. Mikumhmei noun tihei Material Noun kaw e.

Puat khat kasiamh khou gut nuhmei, kakiak kakiak swbak sihnic kazanc kalaih makmei noun ta tei Material Noun kaw e. Syniang, kachaekc, dui, muk, mikumhmei guay hei material noun the.

(4) Abstract Noun

(a) **Ramhpingmei** ta zamsimei kaw e.

(b) **Lunghthanmei, nchumhmei** lat saamei nkauhmei panty e.

(c) **Gaymei** ta laaniimei raana e.

(d) **Khaenglouthaymei** gunc hei meic kataana khang kage nai e.

(e) **Nchumhmei** maekna **tanhmei, bauhmei** raana rui rihngam tuang hamh e.

Tiiloubammei latrian guay khou hei ramhpingmei, lunghthanmei, nchumhmei, gaymei, khaengvlouthaymei, tanhmei, bauhmei, mi guay hei lungning na rui thaymei kalwn kaliak maekmei gunh guay zanc raana e. Mi kumhmei guay tihei **Abstract Noun** kaw e.

Kalwn kaliak maekmei lungning rui thaymei, kakhanhmei, gunc mi kumhmei noun ta Abstract Noun kaw e.

Latkamv khang :- **kheyliak, chariakhthaymei, lunghgutmei,** mi kumhmei guay e.

(5) Collective Noun

Nchu **kapang kapang** samc e.

Guaih **kang** khat lau khou patre.

Mi **class** khou hei nchamnac riakdei nai e.

Kailiangh khat zaeng kum e.

Mi latrian guay khou hei 'kapang' hei nruay kasing geihmei ta thay e. Class twmei hei ntumei-ngaanvmei nchamnac nunc thaymei latkaeng e, 'kang' twmei hei guaih mpeyna ta thay e, 'kailiangh' twmei hei kailaek asaekc kariumei ta thay e. Mi kumhmei noun tihei **Collective Noun** twna kaw e

Maansei, khouringh, puatc guay kapang, kakang ta thaymei nount ta Collective Noun kaw e.

Latkamv khang :- **khangchu, pei, lauzam, sucnunc,** mi kumhmei guay hei the.

Karuc khou noun zaat guay kathai kan the. Ruanglat khou noun zaat panguh nai e. Mi panguh kiu thu-

(1) proper noun
(2) common noun
(3) material noun
(4) abstract noun
(5) collective noun, mi guay hei e

KATHAIDWAN - 16

1. Noun zaat azuh nai bo ? Kazanc guay hy lana latkamv khat khat hylou o.
2. Proper Noun tabui ta cho ? Latkamv kanei hy o.
3. Common Noun lev Collective Noun zamh nchamhc makmei tabui tei cho ? Latkamv hyna ndauh o.
4. Abstract Noun tabui ta cho ? Latkamv hyna ndauh o.
5. Material Noun tabui ta cho? Latkamv kanei tii o.

3.3.2 PRONOUN ZAAT

Noun phaan lynmei latkaeng ta **Pronoun** kaw e. Mi hei ncham kan the. Ntaw tho pronoun hei kazaat azuh nai cho twmei zauc kho.

(1) Personal Pronoun

(1) **Ai** saa pwng e.

(2) **Nang** tabui saa nii bo?

(3) **Kamei** thay pwni day?

(4) **Nangniw** tabui taanh khang cho?

Karuc khou ai, nang, kamei, nangniw twmei latkaeng guay hei noun phaan lynmei - pronoun raana e. 'Ai' hei lat saa bammei mei tatei thay e, 'nang, nangniw' twmei hei rui lat nking bammei tatei thay e, khatnic 'kamei' twmei hei mi lat saa bammei nic hamh, nking bammei nic hamh tihkic kalam khou saatow bammei kathumhmei 'mei' ta thay e.

Latsaa bampui mei tatei thaymei pronoun ta **first person** kaw e.
Latkamv :- ai, aniu.

Lat nking bampui mei ta tei thaymei pronoun ta **second person** kaw e.
Latkamv:- nang, nangniw

Lat saa bammei hamh, nking bammei nic hamh tihkic kalam khou saatow bammei kathumh swmei mei ta thaymei pronoun tatei **third person** kaw e.
Latkam :- kamei, kaniw

Person kathumh ta thaymei, meic ta thaymei pronoun ta Personal Pronoun kaw e.

(2) Demonstrative Pronoun

(a) **Mihei** thow cho ?

(b) **Heictei** thow tuang cho ?

(c) Kamei **mitei** laa pwlak ge.

Mi latrian guay khou hei mihei, heictei, mitei mi pronoun guay hei meic hamhethei puatc ta soucna dinc e. Kumhpui zaengrui **meic hamhethei puatc ta soucna dinhmei ta thaymei pronoun ta Demonstrative Pronoun twna kaw e.**

Latkamv :- Mi, mihei, mitei, heic, heictei, mikumhmei, guay hei e.

(3) Infinite Pronoun

Kabangc khou hyloumei hei zauc kho.

(a) Mihei **puiruhnac** rui nuh e.

(b) **Kaguayna** gaymei raana di the.

(c) **Ramh** khat kage nai e.

(d) **Gaanvsaekc** thu mitei kage nai nuh e.

(e) **Thoupwnic** nuh de.

Mi latrian guay khouhei puiruhnac, kaguayna, ramh, gaanvsaekc, thowpwnic, mi guay hei pronoun raana e. Mi pronoun guay hei thow phaan hamhethei tabui puat phaan lyn tu cho twmei nthan thiakhthiak mak ge. Mi kumhmei pronoun tihei **Infinite Pronoun** kaw e.

Thow phaan, tabui phaan lyn tu cho twmei nthanna thay makmei pronoun ta Infinite Pronoun kaw e.

Latkamv :- meicnunc, kaguayna, ramhguay, thow pwnic.

(4) Distributive Pronoun

Kabangc khou hyloumei latrian guay hei zauc kho.

(a) **Khat khat** swna nangniw gut ro.

(b) **Khatnasihnic** khuay guay kaling hamh e.

(c) **Khat ny khat ny** nangney bam o.

(d) **Meicsing** kaniw daengkaa phay phay mphang e.

Mi latrian guay khou hei khat khat, khatnasihnic, khat ny khat ny, meicsing twmei pronoun guay hei kasing geihmei khouteirui khat khat swna naimei meic hamhethei puatc zamh phaan-lyn swmei pronoun e. Mi kumhmei pronoun tihei **distributive pronoun** kaw e.

Meic, puatc tazumei khou khat khat swna nai bammei ta thaymei pronoun ta Distributive Pronoun kaw e.

Latkamv :- khat khat, kathuih, khatnasihnic, meicsing

(5) Reflexive Pronoun

(a) Ai **araana** nzamh e.

(b) Gayrei **karaana** ta maengzau khou zauc e.

(c) **Karaana kakhubut** doupui lat saa e.

(d) **Karaa karaana** lwn thay kho.

(e) Kaihouhmei nunc **kaniw raana** latgeic khwan e.

Mi latrian guay khouhei araana, karaana, karaa karaana, kaniw raana twmei latkaeng guay hei noun hamhethei pronoun guay lev khatna swmei tei ndauh e. Mi kumhmei pronoun tihei **reflexive pronoun** kaw e.

Noun hamhethei baihmei pronoun lev khatna swmei tei ndauhmei pronoun ta Reflexive Pronoun kaw e.

(6) Interogative Pronoun

Tiiloumei latrian guay hei zauc kho.

(a) **Thow** tat khang cho?

(b) **Thow thow** cho chadi langv e?.

(c) **Tabui** rui hy khang?

(d) **Tabui tabui** tei phungh khang cho?

(e) **Akumhmei** tei laa khang cho?

(f) **Thowramc** mei guang bo?

Mi latkaeng guay khouhei thow, thow thow, tabui, tabui tabui, akumhmei, thowramc twmei guay hei thanvmei thaymei pronoun raana e. Mi kumhmei tihei **interogative pronoun** kaw e.

Thanvmei ta thaymei pronoun ta Interrogative Pronoun kaw e.

Latkamv: - tabui, thow, akumhmei, tabui tabui, thow thow, akumh akumhmei twmei guay hei the.

(7) Emphasizing Pronoun

Kabangc khou hyloumei latrian guay hei zauc kho.

(a) **Ai kahak** tat tangc the.

(b) **Kaidai kahak** tei tho daic hak mak ge.

(c) **Latkaeng kahak** tei nking sii maih the.

(d) **Kaniw kahak** kaniw khuay saa ndauh the.

(e) **Guangh kapumc kahak** guangna swan tei tiipat re.

(f) **Apumc kahak** hei nringh kaipat swna tiipat re.

(g) **Kaniw pumc kahak** court khou lyan kan e.

Karuc khou latrian guay khouhei ai kahak, kaidai kahak, latkaeng kahak, kaniw kahak khatnic kapumc kahak, apumc kahak, kaniw pumc kahak twmei latkaeng guay hei noun hamhethei pronoun tatei kathuk tiilouna saa e. Mi tihei **emphasizing pronoun** kaw e.

Noun hamhethei pronoun ta kathuk tiilouna saamei pronoun latkaeng tatei Emphasizing Pronoun kaw e.

Latkamv : - kahak, apumc kahak, kapumc kahak, kaniw pumc kahak, mi guay hei e.

Karuc khou kathai kariang kanmei hei zauc pwkhou Ruanglat khou pronoun chanei hei mphang e. miguay kiu thu -

(1) personal pronoun
(2) demonstrative pronoun
(3) distributive pronoun
(4) indefinite pronoun
(5) reflexive pronoun
(6) interogative pronoun
(7) emphasizing pronoun, hei e.

KATHAIDWAN - 17

1. Ruanglat khou pronoun zaat azuh nai bo? Tabui tabui tei cho?
   Nang raana hy o, latkamv khat khat hy o
2. Person azuh nai bo? Tabui tabui tei cho?
   Latkamv khat khat hy o.
3. Personal pronoun tabui tei cho?
   Latkamv tiina dinc o.
4. Puatc hamhethei meic ta soucna saamei pronoun ta tabui kaw bo? Latkamv tiina dinc o
5. Tiiloumei pronoun guay hei tabui tabui pronoun cho?
   Akumhmei _____
   Araana _____
   Nang _____
   Mitei _____
   Puiruhnac _____

3.3.3 ADJECTIVE ZAAT

Noun khatnic pronoun gunc ndauhmei latkaeng ta adjective kaw e twmei kathai kan the. Ntaw hei adjective zaat azuh nai cho twmei zauc kho.

(1) Qualitative Adjective (Adjective of Quality)

Qualitative Adjective tabui tei cho? Mihei thay khang kabangc khou tiiloumei latrian guay hei kathai zauc kho

	Latrian	Adjective	Adjective taanv
(a)	Kamei sansipui mei e.	sansipui	'meic' lwnlung, gunc saa ndauh e.
(b)	Hypei haenghmei tei tii o.	haenghmei	'hypei' lwn tei saa ndauh e.
(c)	Howgaymei mwn khat puangc bam e.	howgaymei	'mwn' lwn tei saa ndauh e.
(d)	Lai daihmei khoutei dui nai e.	daihmei	'lai' lwn tei saa ndauh e.
(e)	Luaysiimei Gayrim guang e.	luaysimei	'Gayrim' gunc saa ndauh e.

Karuc khou latrian guay khou sinsw bammei adjective guay heirui noun khatnic pronoun zamh lwnlung, gunc ta saa ndauh e. Mi kumhmei adjective tihei **Qualitative Adjective** kaw e.

Noun khatnic pronoun zamh gunc, lwnlung ta dinhmei adjective ta Qualitative Adjective kaw e.

Latkamv: - gaymei, siimei, nsuanmei, tanhmei, mphwanmei, mikumhmei guay hei e.

(2) Quantitative Adjective (Adjective of Quantity)

Quantitative adjective hei kalwn thay khang kabangc khou tiiloumei latrian guay hei kathai kho.

	Latrian	Adjective	Adjective taanv
(a)	Ntey titna tii o.	titna	Ntey azuh cho dinc e.
(b)	Dui taleina zangv me.	taleina	Dui azuh cho dinc e.
(c)	Katingh geicdou nkhan kan the.	geicdou	katingh azuh cho dinc e.
(d)	Syan heiczu hei kage maek ge.	heiczu	syan azuh cho dinc e.
(e)	Saamh khou nap tazu nai e.	tazu	nap azuh nai cho dinc e.

Mi latrian guay khouhei titna, taleina, geicdou, heizu, tazu twmei latkaeng guay hei rui noun zamh kachaengc tei dinc e. Mi kumhmei noun zamh chaengc dinhmei adjective latkaeng tihei **quantitative adjective** kaw e.

Noun zamh kachaengc dinhmei adjective ta Quantitative Adjective kaw e

Latkamv: - peyna, kaguayna, kapwmna, asaek

(3) Numeral Adjective (Adjective of Number)

Numeral adjective hei kalwn thay khang kabangc khou latrian guay hei zauc kho.

(a) Adai rui **reymei** swan tei laatow kan e.

(b) Nang **kaneimei** rian khoutei ding o.

(c) Tingthai **kathumh** laaguang o.

(d) Zaeng **chanei** rui neidak khat sw e.

Mi latrian guay khouhei 'reymei' kaneimei, kathumh, chanei twmei adjective guay hei nthei-rey thaymei sing hamhethei kasing ta thaymei adjective e. Mi kumhmei adjective ta **numeral adjective** kaw e.

Kasing hamhethei kasing lev kariang naina nthei-rey tithaymei adjective ta Numeral Adjective kaw e.

Latkamv :- reymei, kaneimei, kathumhmei, chanei, ruh, mikumhmei hei e.

(4) Distributive Adjective

Kabangc khou latrian guay hei kathaina distributive adjective lwn thay khang sw kho.

(a) Meic **khat khat** swna saa kho.

(b) Abahthai **kanei kanei** zuanc bam e.

(c) Gin **kathuihna** khouhei guang e.

Mi latrian guay khouhei khat khat, kanei kanei, kathuih twmei adjective guay hei kalangv kalangv swmei ta how e. Mikumhmei adjective tihei **distributive adjective** kaw e.

Kalangv kalangv swmei ta thaymei adjective ta Distributive Adjective kaw e.

Latkamv :- kathuih, pum, sing, khat khat, kanei kanei, mikummei guay hei e.

(5) Demonstrative Adjective

(a) **Mitei** thow cho?

(b) **Mi** hypei hei thow tuang cho?

(c) **Heic** ramc tei tat khang e.

(d) **Heic** kai tei pun pwni the.

Mi latrian guay khou 'mi, heic', twmei adjective rui kadaeng khou noun hamhethei pronoun ta soucna dinc e. Mi adjective tihei **demonstrative adjective** kaw e.

Soucna dinhmei adjective ta Demonstrative Adjective kaw e.

Latkamv: - Mi, heic, mitei, mihei, heictei, - mi guay hei e.

(6) Interrogative Adjective

Thanvmei thaymei adjective nic nai e. Mitei thay gay khang kabangc khou hyloumei latrian guay hei kathai zauc kho.

(a) Hauphic khoutei haubungc **azuh** nai bo?

(b) Nang taanc niimei kiu **tabui** taanv cho?

(c) **Akumhmei** phey tei cho?

Mi latrian guay khouhei azuh, tabui, akumhmei, twmei adjective guay hei thanvmei thaymei latrian khou sinsw e. Mikumhmei adjective tihei **interrogative adjective** kaw e.

Thanvmei thaymei adjective ta Interrogative Adjective kaw e.

Latkamv :- azuh, tabui, akumhmei mikumhmei guay hei e.

Aniw rui thay e, Ruanglat khou kabangc khou tiiloumei adjective zaat charuk hei mphang e.

(1) Qualitative Adjective (Adjective of quality) - Kagunc, kalwn, kathukh dinhmei

(2) Quantitative Adjective (Adjective of quatity) - Kachaengc, geic-rau dinhmei

(3) Numeral Adjective (Adjective of Number) - Kasing, kasing lev kariangrian nthei-rey dinhmei

(4) Distributive Adjective - Kalangv kalangv, kakang kakang dinhmei

(5) Demonstrative Adjective - Soucna, nchinna dinhmei

(6) Interrogative Adjective - Thanvmei ta thaymei

KATHAIDWAN - 18

1. Ruanglat khou adjective azuh nai bo ? Tabui tabui cho hy o.

_____ _____ _____ _____

_____ _____ _____ _____

2. Adjective zaat hy o (katwn chaana)

(a) Soucna, nchinna dinhmei _____

(b) Kachaengc, geic-rau dinhmei _____

(c) Thanvmei thaymei _____

(d) Kasing, nthei-rey dinhmei _____

(e) Khat khat, kalang kalang dinhmei _____

(f) Kagunc, kalwn, kathukh dinhmei _____

3. Kabangc khou hyloumei adjective guay zamh latkamv kathumh kathumh hy o.

(a) Qualitative adjective

_____ _____ _____

(b) Distributive adjective

_____ _____ _____

(d) Quantitative adjective

_____ _____ _____

(e) Interrogative adjective

_____ _____ _____

(f) Numeral adjective

_____ _____ _____

4. Kabangc khou hyloumei adjective guay hei nchamc chamcmei tei zay kariulou o.

(a) Adjective of Number - Qualitative Adjective
(b) Quantitative Adjective - Numeral Adjective
(c) Adjective of Quality - Adjective of Quantity

3.3.4 VERB ZAAT

Taanhmei, kumhmei, swmei ta thaymei latkaeng ta verb kaw e twmei kathai the. Taanhmei, swmei khou subject rui taancpat tuang e. Mi hei kathai gay khang kabangc khou latrian guay hei zauc kho.

Latrian	***subject***	***verb***	***object***
Guaipuang bam e.	Guaipuang	bam e	x
Kamei guang e.	Kamei	guang e	x
Ai kata thay e.	Ai	thay e	kata
Mi tei hypei e.	Mi tei	e	hypei
Adam apammei e.	Adam	e	apammei
Gayrey tatdyn hy e.	Gayrey	hy e	tatdyn

(1) Ai kata thay e, thow ta thay ? kata - object ge
Gayrey tatdyn hy e, tabui hy ? tatdyn - object ge

Subject zamh object naimei verb ta Transitive Verb kaw e

Latkamv - thay, hy, thou, zay - mikumhmei hei e.

(2) Karuc khou tiiloumei latrian khouhei Guaipuang bam e, Kamei guang e , hei object kazauh mak ge. Mikumhmei **object maekmei verb tihei Intransitive Verb kaw e.**

3.3.5 ADVERB ZAAT

Adverb hei kabah khatnic piumei lwan theilayna kabangc khou hyloumei kang kumcna kathai nuh e.

(1) Adverb of Time (Kaganv dinhmei)

(a) Mihei ai **kahunungc** chu kan the
(b) Aniu taanv **ntaw** kahouh pwni the.
(c) Ai tatdyn tei **nyanna** laatou the
(d) Kamei khouhei **tingmik pum** guang e
(e) Kamei khouhei **thaurey khou** taanclou e

Tiiloumei latrian guay khouhei kahunungc, ntaw, nyan, tingmik pum, thaurey khou miguay hei verb rui taanhmei lev kariang nai e. Mi kumhmei guay tihei **Adverb of Time** e.

Verb rui taanhmei lev kariang naimei ganv ta dinhmei adverb ta Adverb of Time kaw e.

Latkamv:- aseic, nthuanh, doulaaneic, katumcna, asaanhmakna - mikumhmei guay hei e.

(2) Adverb of Place (Katwn dinhmei)

(a) **Khouhei** ding o
(b) Khav **duibangc** bam e.
(c) Jisu **thei** lay o.
(d) Mouc **thingtwan** tow e.
(e) Ai **kaithyan** tat re.

Karuc khou tiiloumei latrian guay khouhei, duibangc, thingtwan, thei, kaithyan miguay hei verb rui taanhmei kabamv katwn ta dinc e. Miguay hei **Adverb of Place** the.

Verb rui taanhmei kabamv, katwn dinhmei adverb ta Adverb of Place kaw e.

Latkamv:- mpaeng, kalungc, nthei, karuc, chaeng twn, kaithei mikumhmei guay hei e.

(3) Adverb of Manner (akumh swna, tabui thiak khou)

(a) Thuancku pac **nthan** e.
(b) David gari thou **tanc** e.
(c) Ngasatna tei **guangcna** tat re.
(d) Puatc tei **nzaengna** loukey e.
(e) Miktiatmei tei **kathamna** pac e.

Tiiloumei latrian guay khouhei nthan,tanc, guangcna, nzaengna, kathamna - mi adverb guay hei rui verb rui taanhmei tei akumhna, tabui thiak, tabui lwnlung khou twmei tei dinc e. Kumna mi guay hei **adverb of manner** raana e.

Verb rui taanhmei thiak, lwnlung ta dinhmei adverb ta tei Adverb of Manner kaw e.

Latkamv: -

Kaucna kap be,
Pakna nthau e.
Nzianna nkhavlou e,
Taanc **katumc** e

- mi khou miwloumei latkaeng guay hei **adverb of manner** raana e.

(4) Adverbs of Degree (adih geic, adih kamv)

(a) Kamei **peyna** katupna guang e.
(b) Nap katumc **langvna** tu riu.
(c) Syan geic **hakna** nai e.
(d) Kakhuan hei geic **rahraa** the.
(e) Tunac tei lu suan chuy **liang** e.

Karuc khou tiiloumei latrian khouhei peyna, langvna, rahraa, hakna, liang - miguay hei verb taanv ta kagat, kachaengc tei dinhmei adverb guay e.

Adjective khatnic adverb zamh kachaengc, kagat tithaymei adverb ta Adverb of Degree twna kaw e.

Latkamv:-

Kamei guang zaic liang e.

Nap geic **langvna** tw riu.

Taanv sii **hakna** taanh riu.

Katei geic **hian** e.

(5) Adverb of Frequency (adih katup kabup)

(a) Khouhei kamei guang **liang** nei the.

(b) Naptu **katup** langv riu.

(c) Mi lu hei **kadakdak** khou chu e.

(d) Kata Imphal khou how **tanhtan** de.

(e) Kamei khou hei **khatsihnic** guang mak ge.

Karuc khou tiiloumei latrian guay khouhei 'liangnei, katup, kadakdak, tanhtan, khatsihnic' miguay hei verb rui taanhmei tei adihkamv katup kabup cho twmei tei dinc e. Mikumhmei adverb hei **Adverb of Frequency** raana e.

Adihkamv, akumhna katupna pat cho twmei dinhmei adverb ta Adverb of Frequency kaw e.

(6) Interrogative Adverbs

(a) Adam **tabui khou** bam bo?

(b) Kamei **tabui khang** guang tu cho?

(c) Kaniw **tabuinungc** tat khang cho?

(d) Nang **akumhna** taanc nina cho?

(e) Nang khau khou syan **azuh** nai bo?

Karuc khou tiiloumei latrian khouhei tabui khou, tabui khang, tabui nungc, akumhna, azuh, - miguay hei verb taanv ta thanvmei latkaeng raana e. Mi kumhmei adverb tihei **Interrogative Adverb** kaw e.

Thanvmei ta thaymei adverb ta Interrogative Adverb kaw e.

Latkamv :-Tabuiswna, tabui khou, tabui nungc, akumhna, azuh - mi guay hei e.

Kumna Ruanglat khou adverb zaat charuk hei mphang e.

(1) Adverb of Time	(Verb zamh taanv ganv dinhmei)
(2) Adverb of Place	(Verb zamh taanv bamv dinhmei)
(3) Adverb of Manner	(Verb zamh taanv thiak dinhmei)

(4) Adverb of Degree (Verb zamh taanv azuh, adihkamv dinhmei)
(5) Adverb of Frequency (Verb zamh taanv katup kabupmei dinhmei)
(6) Interrogative Adverb (Verb zamh taanv lam khou thanvmei)

KATHAIDWAN - 19

1. Adverb zaat azuh nai cho ? Mi zaat guay zanc tei hy o.
2. Gaatmei tei hy padiklou o.
   (a) Verb zamh taanv ganv dinhmei adverb ta .....kaw e.
   (b) Verb zamh taanv bamv dinhmei adverb ta ..... kaw e.
   (c) Verb zamh .....dinhmei adverb ta adverb of manner kaw e.
   (d) Verb zamh .....dinhmei adverb ta adverb of degree kaw e.
   (e) Adverb of Frequency hei ..... dinhmei adverb e.
   (f) Verb zamh taanv lam khou thanvmei adjective ta ..... kaw e.
3. Kabangc khou tiiloumei latrian guay khouhei naimei adverb kapahpatna kazaat saa o.
   (a) Mitei akumhna pat kan tu cho?
   (b) Kamei kai khou bam e.
   (c) Kamei khouhei guang liang nei the.
   (d) Mitei peyna kunghmei puat re.
   (e) Gari tei thou ranvna tat kan e.
   (f) Kakai Imphal khou nai e.
   (g) Kamei adih kabiu tha?

3.3.6 CONJUNCTION ZAAT

Latrian lev latrian hamhethei latkaeng lev latkaeng ta zay kariuloumei latkaeng ta conjunction kaw e, twmei hei kathai kan the. Kumna ntaw thu conjunction latkaeng guay rui latkaeng lev latkaeng khatnic latrian ta zay kariumei lwn tei zauc lana kazaat kapah kho.

1. Coordinating Conjunction

(a) Baeng lev phuc kahaw e.

(b) Nap khatnic bi lingclou e.

(c) Nap hamhethei ntyan tw kho.

(d) Ai nic kamei nic tat nii e.

Karuc khou latrian guay khou hei lev, khatnic, hamhethei, nic-nic twmei conjuction guay hei rui latkaeng kanei ta zay kariuloumei swna piu e.

Latrian ta zay kariuloumei lwn tei zauc dat kho.

(a) Kamei guang pwni kumna puatc tei phungcguang pwni.

(b) Ai phey tei phungcguang pwni tihkic mi hei gay hakmei thu hamh e.

(c) Gaythuih M.A luaimei the khatnic Philip M.Com luaimei e.

Tiiloumei latrian guay khou hei kumna, tihkic, khatnic twmei conjunction guay hei rui latrian kanei kanei ta zay kariulou e.

Tiilou reymei latrian padei hei zauc kaluaih dat kho.

Latrian	***Latrian kanei tipatmei***	***conjunction***
(a) Baeng lev phuc kahaw e.	Baeng kahaw e, phuc kahaw e	lev
(b) Nap khatnic bi lingclou e.	Nap lingclou e, bi lingclou e	khatnic
(c) Nap hamhethei ntyan tu kho.	Nap tu kho, ntyan tu kho	hamhethei
(d) Ai nic kamei nic tat nii e.	Ai tat nii e, kamei tat nii e.	nic - nic

Heic kumna swbakna zauc pwkhou latrian guay hei latrian kanei kanei zay kariuna kasiamh tuang e twna laa nuh e. Kumna karuc khou tiiloumei kalangv kanei hei zauc pwkhou tiiloumei conjunction guay hei kabah nchamcmei nthuihmei latrian guay zay kariulou tuang e twmei thay e. Mi kumhmei conjunction tihei coordinating conjunction twna kaw e.

Latkaeng lev latkaeng hamhethei kabah nchamcmei nthuihmei latrian guay zay kariuloumei conjunction ta Coordinating Conjunction kaw e.

Latkamv:- lev, khatnic, hamhethei, nic-nic, kum pwkhou, kumethei, kumetihkic, kumhpui zaengrui - mi kumhmei guay hei e.

2. Subordinating Conjunction:

Conjunction zaat baihmei khat zauc dat kho.

(a) Kamei tat pwni twmei ai thay e.

(b) Nang guang pwni de twethei ai nang ta nkhwan bam pwni.

(c) Phey tei gay e tihkic meic rui mitei kahaw mak ge.

Karuc khou tiiloumei latrian khouhei -

twmei	=	twna saamei
twethei	=	twtuang nai ethei
tihkic	=	twkhwan sihnic

Latrian guay		***Conjunction***
(a) Kamei tat pwni **twmei** ai thay e.	=	twmei
(b) Nang guang pwni **twethei** ai nang ta nkhwan bam pwni.	=	twethei
(c) Phey tei gay e **tihkic** meic rui kahaw mak ge`	=	tihkic

(a) khou 'kamei tat pwni twmei' hei kabah phaamei tii ngam makmei latrian e, khourui 'ai thay e' twmei hei rui kadai swna saaniimei lat tei e. Mikumhmei latrian guay ta zay kariuloumei conjunction tei 'twmei' hei e.

(b) lev (c) khou nic 'twethei' 'tihkic' twmei hei kathiak nchamcmei conjunction raana e. Mi kumhmei conjunction tihei subordinating conjunction kaw e.

Kabah phaamei tii ngammakmei latrian khat lev kabah phaamei latrian khat lev zay kariuloumei conjunction ta Subordinate Conjunction kaw e.

Latkamv:-

twna, twmei, twsihnic, twethei, tihkic.

Kumna Conjunction zaat kanei nai e. Mikiu thu -

(1) Coordinating Conjunction

(2) Subordinating Conjunction

3.3.7 INTERJECTION ZAAT

Mik khou howna, nukuanc khou chuna, lungning khou thuphthupna ningmei, kadathdatmei neihlaamei, zaengsimei raa rahpatmei latkaeng guay ta tei Interjection kaw e.

Latkamv khang :-

Kadathdatmei ndauhmei	=	Is! Hi! Tabuichu!
Neihlaamei ndauhmei	=	Gai the da! Neihlaa e bo!
Karaengmei ndauhmei	=	Ach! Chany chakhow e!
Ryanraamei ndauhmei	=	Hi! Ai mu ni!
Lunghpuamhmei ndauhmei	=	Tut! Tabui-a!
Kaluangmei ndauhmei	=	Hei! Alaih!
Suhmei ndauhmei	=	Alei! alei! alei! Apuai alei !

Interjection hei kazaat takhauhkhauna nai thuai makge. Lungning khou thuphthupna saapatmei guay tei rui tabui cho twmei tei thay e.

KATHAIDWAN - 20

1. Conjunction zaat azuh nai cho? Tabui tabui tei cho?
2. Coordinating Conjunction lev Subordinating Conjunction nchamc makmei tabui tei cho?
3. Interjection tabui tei cho? Latkamv asaekc hy o.
4. Pingmei, kaluangmei, suhmei, charynmei ndauhmei Interjection latrian khat khat kasiamh o.

3.4.0 LATKAENG DUANHMEI
(Word Formation)

Latkaeng hei swbakna kabah naimei suic nganvloumei latkaeng hamhethei latkiak tatei root kaw e. Mi kumhmei root tihei tisaengc tadaicpat lana latkaeng kabah baih baihmei tipat re. Mi root khouhei kathei kahu latkaeng haap kuanlouna kabah baihmei latkaeng tipat re. Mi kumhmei lwan tihei grammar khou **Word Formation** - latkaeng kasiamhpatmei twna kaw e. Word Formation lwan khou hei **affixation** khatnic **compounding** hei kadai swmei e.

Affixation

Affixation hei latkaeng thei-hu khou haapguangna latkaeng ta tisaengc tidaic patmei ta e. Affixation hei kanei patna thay e - **prefixation** khatnic **suffixation.** Prefixation hei latkaeng hu khou haapguangmei khatnic suffixation hei nthei khou haapguangmei ta thay e. Kumna affixation hei duina *prefix* + **root** + *suffix* twna saa nchin nuh e.

Compounding

Root kanei hamhethei kanei khangsuangc geicna kariuna duanhmei ta compounding twna thay e.

(1) AFFIXATION

(i) Prefixation

Noun zamh bound root hu khou **ka** prefix swlouna noun latkaeng kasiamh saengcpatna ti-nthuihlou e.

ganv khou **ka** prefix swna	**ka + ganv**	=	**kaganv**
riw khou **ka** prefix swna	**ka + riw**	=	**kariw**
laan khou **ka** prefix swna	**ka + laan**	=	**kalaan**
laanv khou **ka** prefix swna	**ka + laanv**	=	**kalaanv**

Noun zamh **bound root** hu khou **noun root** akhat prefix swlouna latkaeng kasiamh e. Metei latkamv swna kabangc khoulyanlou e. ***nap, ting, thing, suh*** miguay hei **independent noun root** raana e.

guy bound root khou **nap** prefix swlouna	**nap + guy**	=	**napguy**
thai bound root khou **ting** prefix swlouna	**ting + thai**	=	**tingthai**

maan bound root khou **thing** prefix swlouna **thing + maan = thingmaan**
zam bound root khou **suh** prefix swlouna **suh + zam = suhzam**

Verb root hu khou **sw** prefix swlouna verb latkaeng tisaengcpatna tinthuihlou e.

bak khou **sw** prefix swna	**sw + bak**	=	**swbak**
kasic khou **sw** prefix swna	**sw + kasic**	=	**swkasic**
kaek khou **sw** prefix swna	**sw + kaek**	=	**swkaek**

Verb root hu khou **ti** prefix swlouna verb latkaeng tisaengcpat re.

thay khou **ti** prefix swna	**ti + thay**	=	**tithay**
tat khou **ti** prefix swna	**ti + tat**	=	**titat**
saa khou **ti** prefix swna	**ti + saa**	=	**tisaa**
taanc khou **ti** prefix swna	**ti + taanc**	=	**titaanc**

Verb root khou **ram** prefix swlouna noun latkaeng kasiamh e.

gay khou **ram** prefix swna	**ram + gay**	=	**ramgai**
taanh khou **ram** prefix swna	**ram + taanh**	=	**ramtaan**
zangv khou **ram** prefix swlouna	**ram + zangv**	=	**ramzang**
tat khou **ram** prefix swna	**ram + tat**	=	**ramtat**

Verb root khou **karam** prefix swlouna noun latkaeng kasiamh e.

hy khou **karam** prefix swna	**karam + hy**	=	**karamhi**
phungh khou **karam** prefix swna	**karam + phungh**	=	**karamphung**
zauh khou **karam** prefix swna	**karam + zauh**	=	**karamzau**
ding khou **karam** prefix swna	**karam + ding**	=	**karamding**

(ii) Suffixation

Verb root khat khou **'mei'** suffix swlouna latkaeng tisaengcpatna nominal form tiswlou e.

tat khou **mei** suffix swna	**tat + mei**	=	**tatmei**
bam khou **mei** suffix swna	**bam + mei**	=	**bammei**
taanh khou **mei** suffix swna	**taanh + mei**	=	**taanhmei**

Verb root khou **'na'** suffix swlouna adverb latkaeng kasiamh e.

kap khou **na** suffix swna	**kap + na**	=	**kapna**
nuic khou **na** suffix swna	**nuic + na**	=	**nuicna**
pak khou **na** suffix swna	**pak + na**	=	**pakna**

Noun root khou bound root lev nominalizer suffix swlouna latkaeng kasiamh e.

noun root	+	verb root	+	nominalizer		
ntanh	+	**dy**	+	**mei**	=	**ntanhdymei**
lau	+	**taanh**	+	**mei**	=	**lautaanhmei**
thing	+	**ruamh**	+	**mei**	=	**thingruamhmei**
rav	+	**khaeng**	+	**mei**	=	**ravkhaengmei**
ramh	+	**thay**	+	**mei**	=	**ramhthaymei**

(2) COMPOUNDING

(i) Root khat lev baihmei root, hamhethei latkaeng khat lev baihmei latkaeng khat, kariuna latkaeng kasiamh e.

pui lev **nah** kariuna	**pui + nah**	=	**puinav**
pu lev **nah** kariuna	**pu + nah**	=	**punav**
lat lev **meic** kariuna	**lat + meic**	=	**latmei**
lau lev **kaipouc** kariuna	**lau + kaipouc**	=	**laupouc**
baeng lev **thaenghpui bamv** kariuna	**baeng + thaeng**	=	**baengthaeng**
guaih lev **kalingc** kariuna	**guaih + kalingc**	=	**guailingc**
si lev karakpui **kang** kariuna	**si + kang**	=	**sikang**
nap lev suanghpui **lai** kariuna	**nap + lai**	=	**naplai**
lau lev tatpui **chaeng** kariuna	**lau + chaeng**	=	**lauchaeng**

Noun root khat lev bound root khat lev kariuna noun latkaeng kasiamh e.

thing	+	**nuy**	=	**thingnuy**
dui	+	**thuak**	=	**duithuak**
guh	+	**phic**	=	**guhphic**
Baanh	+	**laa**	=	**baanhlaa**

(ii) Kabiswmei root khat khou ngangvlouna kariang naimei latkaeng guay kasiamhpat re.

kai twmei root hei sinswna kariang naimei latkaeng guay kasiamh e.

kai + kakhunc khatnamei	=	**kaikhunh**
kai + lunghmei luangc	=	**kailuangc**
kai + kaphwn	=	**kaiphwn**
kai + karei	=	**kairei**
kai + kalungc	=	**kailung**

lau twmei root hei sinswna kariang naimei latkaeng guay kasiamh e.

lau + ramvrei	=	**laurei**
lau + daihmei zam	=	**lauzam**
lau + tatmei chaeng	=	**lauchaeng**

dui twmei root hei sinswna kariang naimei latkaeng guay kasiamh e.

dui + mpeih khw/chaeng	=	**duikhw**
dui + haan	=	**duihaan**
dui + lai	=	**duilai**
dui + buangh	=	**duibuangc**
dui + paan	=	**duipaan**
dui + lau	=	**duilau**

(iii) Patpui bamv - **source** thei layna latkaeng kasiamh e.

mik khou patmei dui	**mik**	**+ dui**	**= mikdui**
nouc khou patmei dui	**nouc**	**+ dui**	**= noucdui**
guaihnou khourui patmeinouc dui	**guaihnou**	**+ dui**	**= guaihnoudui**
khuaih bou khourui patmei dui	**khuaih**	**+ dui**	**= khuaihdui**
thingkung khou naimei dui	**thingkung**	**+ dui**	**= thingkungdui**

(iv) Root guay hei **mbai** bamna (prefix) khatnic **nzat** bamna (suffix) kabah baihmei noun latkaeng kasiamh e.

Root	*prefix*	*suffix*
kai	kaithing	thingkai
	kailat	latkai
	kaikhunh	khunhkai

lau	launap	naplau
	lauthing	thinglau
	laudui	duilau
dui	duimik	mikdui
	duilai	laidui
	duitu	tudui

Karuc khou latkaeng akumhna geicpat tu cho twmei khou mikzaw asaekc lou kan the. Mihei rui latkaeng chaapatmei lam khou lungning mikzaw asaekc thu tihowlou e twmei lwm e. Latkaeng kasiamhpatmei hamhethei duancpatmei hei affixation khatnic compounding na hei hamh e, process baihmei guay nic nai e. Tihkic mitei nzaengna thayguang pwni e.

KATHAIDWAN - 21

1. Word Formation tabui ta cho? Word formation khou kabiswmei kanei nai e. Tabui tabui tei cho?
2. Affixation tabui cho? Kazaat azuh nai cho? Hyna ndauh o.
3. Latkaeng duancpatmei khou Compounding twmei hei tabui ta cho? Latkamv tiina hy o.
4. Word formation sw o.

Prefixation	ganv
	bak
Suffixation	tat
	pak
Compounding	pui
	si

CHADAADWAN
TEST- 4

1. Parts of Speech tabui ta cho? Parts of Speech hei tabui khang cho?
2. Ruanglat khou Parts of Speech azuh nai bo ? Tabuibui tei cho?
3. Kabangc khou hyloumei hei hy suak go.
   (a) Noun zaat _____ nai e.
   (b) Pronoun zaat _____nai e.
   (c) Adjective zaat _____nai e.
   (d) Verb zaat _____ nai e.
   (e) Adverb zaat _____ nai e.
   (f) Conjunction zaat _____nai e.
   (g) Interjection zaat _____nai e.
3. Kabangc khou hyloumei hei katwn chaana latkamv khat khat hy o.
   (a) Interrogative Pronoun _____
   (b) Distributive Adjective _____
   (c) Demonstrative Pronoun _____
   (d) Interrogative Adjective _____
   (e) Demonstrative Adjective _____
   (f) Distributive Pronoun _____
4. Kabangc khou tiiloumei latrian zamh Parts of Speech guay khat khat swna khaklangcna matatpat ro.

   Is! Gaythuih pak ranv hak tituang tho gari khangsuangc kai guangtangc zaic the.
5. Word Formation tabui ta cho? Word Formation khou kabiswmei kanei nai e. Tabui tabui tei cho?

4.0 LATRIAN KATHAIMEI

(Syntax)

4.1.0 WORD ORDER

Syntax tabui ta cho?

Lat khat zamh latkaeng, latrian khat tangv khat nai bammei lwan, riak ta **syntax** kaw e. Mi hei lat kaguayna khou nchamc mak ge, baic baic e. Lat lwnliak kathai kariangmei nunc rui lat zamh Phonology, Morphology khatnic Syntax - mi kathaek kathumh hei taangaymakna kathai e. Lat kaguayna zamh lwnliak nchamc mak ge. Lat khat lwnliak lev lat khat lwnliak baic baic e. Phonology khatnic Morphology thaek khou naimei lwnliak guay mi latrik zamh Reymei Latlangv khatnic Kaneimei Latlangv khou kathai kan the. Ntaw Syntax hei kathai kho.

Word Order tabui ta cho?

Latrian thaek khou naimei lwnliak twmei hei latrian khou nai bammei latkaeng khat tangv khat nsuk kariuloumei guay tei the. Mihei lat khat zamh sentence structure ta e. Latkamv khang saa pwkhou 'Ai kata thay e' twmei latrian khouhei naimei latkaeng khat tangv khat hei - subject - object - verb (SOV) nai e. Mihei Ruanglat lwnliak (structure) khat the. Duina khatnic chalahna saa pwkhou mihei Ruanglat zamh **word order** the. Mi kumhmei latrian thaek khou naimei Ruanglat lwnliak asaekc kabangc khou hylou e. Mi latrian lwnliak khouhei kazauh mak nuhmakmei langv na tei nchin tuang e. Tiilou bammei lwnliak khouhei parts of speech nchamcmei latkaeng guay rui kaphaan lynna, adjective, adverb, phrase azuh haaplouna latrian hei tisaengc tidaic bam sihnic, hamhethei, thanvmei latrian ngguanh pwkhou, kiuhamhmei, swmakmei khou ngguanh pwkhou kabiswmei lwnliak tei ngguanh makna nai muay ethei mi kumhmei latrian guay tei lwnliak khatna khou nai bam muay e twna laa pwni. Kabangc khou tiiloumei latkamv guay khou hei zauc kho.

(1)	Latrian lwnliak =	Subject	-	object	-	verb (SOV).
		Ai	-	kata	-	thay e.

Mi lwnliak lev nchamcmei latrian asaekc -

Kabi nap tu e.
Kamei nah pangc e.
Abwanliu latrik pac e.
Mazahbi lau tat re.

Mi kumhmei guay hei karuc khou tiiloumei lwnliak nchamcmei latrian raana the.

(2) Latkaeng guay phrase khou ngguanhna tidaicpat nuh e:

Latkaeng guay ta phrase khou ngguanhlouna ' Ai kata thay e' tihei tidaicpat pwkhou ngguanh patmei latrian tei nic lwnliak nchamc rapmei latrian sw muay pwni de.

Ai/kata/thay e. (Subject-object-verb)
- Meic lwn amuc tanhmei ai / kalwn ngguanhna guangmei kata / thay e.

(3) Baihmei phrase haapkuanlouna tidaicpatmei:
Baihmei phrase haap kuanlouna kalwn kaliak naimei latrian khat ta tidaicpat nuh e.

Ai / kata / thay e. (Subject -object-verb)
- Mi pu ta tei how raph pwkhou ai/kata/kalwn nthanna thay e.

(4) Thanvmei, kiuhamhmei, swmakmei latrian ngguanhpat sihnic kalwn kaliak thu kalaih mak ge twna laa e.

Nang / kata / thay e. (Subject-object-verb)
- Nang / kata / thay bo ? (Thanvmei thaymei)
- Nang / kata / thay mec. (Kiuhamhmei, swmakmei thaymei)
- Nang / kata / thay mang ? (Kiuhamhmei thanvmei thaymei)

Ruanglat latrian asaekc lwnliak zauc kho.

(1) Mi hei latrik ge. - Subject + object + verb
(2) Mazahbi namvpouc sw e. - Subject + object + verb
(3) Kamang guang e. - Subject + verb
(4) Kamei katan rui tat re. - Subject + instrumental + verb
(5) Kamei akhou phey tei tii e. - Subject + dative + object + verb
(6) Kabigay kaithyan thurui guang e. - Subject + ablative + verb
(7) Mihei atuang latrik ge. - Subject + genetive + object + verb
(8) Kamei rui kakai tho puatc tei phungctat khwan e - Subject+locative+object+verb+tense.

4.1.1 PHRASE
(Latchuam)

Latrian thu hamhmei, subject, verb ntangh makmei, latkaeng chuam khat rui parts of speech khat taanv taanc ethei mi tatei PHRASE kaw e. Kumna nic saa nuh e - latkaeng khat phaan latkaeng chuam khat sinswna saa nuh ethei mi latkaeng chuam khat tei **phrase** sw e.

Latkamv : -

(a) Si guang e.
(b) Si mwmei khat guang e.
(c) Dowlaaneic howmei si mwmei tei guang e.

(a) khou 'si' hei noun e, mi hei verb 'guang e' zamh subject sw e.
(b) khou 'si' twmei phaan hei 'si mwmei khat' twmei kariumei latkaeng chuam hei 'guang e' twmei verb zamh subject sw e.

(c) khou 'Dowlaaneic howmei si mwmei tei' hei rui 'guang e' twmei verb zamh subject sw e.

(b) lev (c) zamh latkaeng chuam kanei "si mwmei khat, doulaaneic howmei si mwmei tei"hei 'si' twmei noun phaan lynna noun taanv taanc e. Kumna mi **latchuam** khat khat hei **phrase** the.

Ruanglat khou **phrase** hei kazaat kathumh nai e.

(1) Noun Phrase
(2) Adjective Phrase
(3) Adverbial Phrase

(1) Noun Phrase

Noun taanv taanhmei phrase ta Noun Phrase kaw e. Latkamv khang, kabangc khou riatloumei guay hei noun Phrase the.

Subject swna - Kalwn thay makmei meic khat guang e.
Object swna - Dowlaaneic guangmei nac tei ai thay e.
Compliment swna - Kamei kapumc gaypui mei e.
Case nchamcmei noun - Kalung gaymei pam, Kabipou guang e.

(2) Adjective phrase

Adjective taanv taanhmei phrase ta Adjective Phrase kaw e. Latkamv khang, kabangc khou riatloumei guay hei Adjective Phrase the.

Noun zamh gunc ndauhpatmei swna

(a) Lauluangc pak tanc liangmei alauc tei guang e.

(b) Kalwn gaymei tunacpui tei mic kan the.

(3) Adverbial Phrase

Adverb taanv taanhmei phrase ta Adverbial Phrase kaw e.

Latkamv :-

(a) Kamei guang raphpui lev nang tat nuh the.
(b) Nang guangmei ganv khoutei kamei nic guang the.
(c) Ai tatloulou khou nang nzwan bammei hei akumhna cho?
(d) Nang Manipur State Capital Imphal khou rui guang tuang dai?
(e) Kamei pheybaan guay ta kaan kaanna tat kan e.
(f) Kamei taanv tei chariakh chuy hakna taanc kan e.

KATHAIDWAN - 22

1. Syntax tabui ta cho?
2. Word Order tabui ta cho?
3. Phrase tabui ta cho? Latkamv tiina daw o.
4. Noun Phrase piupui bamv saa o. Latkamv tiina daw o.
5. Kabangc khou hyloumei phrase guay hei tabui tabui phrase cho? Kalam tiina dinc o.
   a) Ai kalung siipui mei kamei ta ariu nii mak ge.
   b) Mihei nang-ai rui ngammei taanv hamh e.
   c) Kaniw kapwmna tat kan the.
6. Kabangc khou tiiloumei latrian guay khouhei rui Adjective Phrase kapahpat ro.
   a) Nang nang pumc rui ngam lak nimei taanv khat sihnic taanh riu.
   b) Aseic guang lak nipui mei zanc tii o.
   c) Kalwn kaliak thay makpui mei ta lat kachuc nii mak ge.
   d) Mi tei peyna gaymei taanv e.
7. Latkamv hy o.
   (a) Noun Phrase _____
   (b) Adjective Phrase _____
   (c) Adverbial Phrase _____.

4.1.2 CLAUSE

Latrian khat lungc khou, subject, verb zaumei latrian launa khat naimei hamhethei latrian zamh kadam khat swna naimei ta **Clause** kaw e.

Kamei guang pwni twmei ai thay e.

Mi latrian khou hei latrian launa kanei zau e-

a) Ai thay e, b) Kamei guang pwni twmei.

Kumna mi latrian khouhei clause kanei nai e. Mi clause kanei khouhei 'Ai thay e' twmei hei karaana nyngthav swna ding ngammei kabah patmei clause e. Mi kumhmei clause tihei nyngthav swmei hamhethei kadai swmei clause kaw e.

Karaana nyngthav swna ding ngammei, kabah patmei clause ta Nyngthav Swmei Clause (Main Clause) kaw e.

(b) Khatdat rui, 'Kamei guang pwni twmei' clause hei tho nyngthav swmei clause kazauh mak gethei karaana ding pwkhou kabah pat suak mak ge, nthuih mak ge. Mi kumhmei clause tihei **kathei laymei clause** hamhethei **kabangc bammei clause** twna thay e.

Karaana ding pwkhou kabah pat makmei, suakdik makmei clause ta Kathei Laymei hamhethei Kabangc Bammei Clasue (Subordinate Clause) kaw e.

Ruanglat khou clause kathumh nai e - Noun Clause, Adjective Clause, khatnic Adverbial Clause miguay hei e. Mi clause guay hei khat khat swna kathai kho.

(1) Noun Clause

Noun taanv taanhmei clause ta Noun Clause kaw e. Kabangc khou tiiloumei latkamv guay hei zauc kho. Noun Clause guay kabangc khou riatlou e.

(a) Subject swna -

Kamei khuay maek ge twmei hei nchumh e.

- Nang rui kalwn thay e twmei mei tei guang the.

(b) Objective swna -
Kamei meigaymei e twmei tei ai rui saa tuang e.

- Nchamnac tei school khoutei ncham bam e twmei hei aniu thay mak ge.

(c) Noun khat lev khatna swna bam kariuna bamdahmei
- Kamei tat kan the twmei chamv hei nkhuaimei de.

(2) Adjective Clause

Adjective taanv taanhmei clause ta Adjective Clause kaw e. Tiiloubamei latrian guay khouhei kabangc khou riatloumei clause guay hei Adjective Clause the.

(a) Nang rui kahaw e twmei latrik tei ai phungcguang the.

(b) Lungcgay hak ge twmei mei kiu thow cho?

(3) Adverbial Clause -

Adverb taanv taanhmei clause ta Adverbial Clause kaw e. Tiiloubammei latrian guay khou hei kabangc khou riatloumei guay hei adverb clause the.

(a) Verb taanv zamh ganv dinhmei -

- Khuangh panguh key the twmei ganv khou nang guang tho.

(b) Verb taanv bamv dinhmei -

- Nang rui ariu kho twmei bamv khou ai guang pwng e.

(c) Verb taanv gwan dinhmei -

- Kamei rui nchumh e twmei thayna taanv taanc e.

(d) Adjective zamh kagat dinhmei -

- Nang rui gay liang the twna saamei puat tei kahaw e.

(e) Verb taanv lam dinhmei -

- Nang rui nzian mec twmei zaengrui kamei guang mak tuang e.

4.1.3 LATRIAN (Sentences)

Ruanglat khou latrian hei kazaat kathumh nai e. Mi guay kiu thu **Simple Sentence** (Chalahmei Latrian), **Complex Sentence** (Alamvmei Latrian) khatnic **Compound Sentence** (Kariumei Latrian) - mi guay hei e.

(1) Simple Sentence (Chalahmei Latrian)

Subject khat verb khat kazauhmei latrian ta Chalahmei Latrian kaw e. Hamhethei subject khat predicate khat kazauhmei latrian ta chalahmei latrian kaw e.

Latkamv :-

(a) Kamei aseic guang e.
(b) Kaniw aseic kaithyan tat pwni.
(c) Nang tat tho.

(2) Complex Sentence (Alamvmei Latrian)

'Tingzyn key pwkhou kaniw nthaekc khwan e.'
Mi latrian khou hei latrian kanei nai e -

(i) Tingzyn key pwkhou, (ii) Kaniw nthaekc khwan e.

Mi nei hei 'kaniw nthaekc khwan the' hei nthuihmei latrian khat re, main clause the, tihkic tingzyn key pwkhou' hei tho karaana ding ngam mak ge. Kumna nthuihmei latrian hamh e. Kumna nyngsw makmei dependent hamhethei subordinate clause khat sw e. Mi kumhmei latrian tihei Complex Sentence kaw e.

Nyng swmei main clause khat zaumei, nyngswmakmei dependent hamhethei subordinate clause khat, hamhethei khat khangsuangc geicna zaumei latrian ta Complex Sentence kaw e.

Latkamv :-

(a) Nang rui tat kho twmei tei ai thay e.

(b) Nang guang nimei ganv khou kiu ai nkhwan bam pwni.

(c) Kamei saa dat dat bam thena ai kakhou tiilou kan the.

(3) Compound Sentence (Kariumei Latrian)

'Bwkaanv gaanc e khatnic aniu chaeng how ngam e.'

Mi latrian hei kalangv kanei pat re - (i) Bwkaanv gaanc e, (ii) Aniu chaeng how ngam e.

Mi latrian kanei tihei conjunction 'khatnic' rui zay kariulou e. Latrian kalangv kanei hei subject khat, predicate khat nai ngam e, karaa karaana ding sihnic kabah tii ngam e, khat khat hei nyngswmei Main Clause khat khat re. Kumna **Main Clause kanei hamhethei kanei mbumei latrian guay duanc kariuloumei ta Compound Sentence (Kariumei Latrian) kaw e.**

Karaa Karaana hamhethei kabah tii ngammei chalahmei latrian kanei kathumh kariuna duanc kariuloumei ta Kariumei Katrian kaw e.

Latkamv -

(a) Zingckei khwan the khatnic tingriu ranvkey the kumna aniw zuat ngam khwan the.

(b) Ai nang chaic ta thu thay mak ge tihkic nang ta thu thay kumcna puat guay hei nang khou nsinlou the.

(c) Kamang tei rah ranvsih e kumna aniw zipkey ping the tihkic aniu daeng khou thu guang mak ge.

Chalahmei latkaeng guay kariuna latrian duanhmei

Subject khatnic verb kalwn howpat makpui zaengrui latrian khat ta chalahmei latrian e twna laa nlaanh nuh e. Kumhpui zaengrui latrian guay kariuna duanhmei *latrian kasiamhmei lwan* kabangc khou hyloumei hei kathai zauc o.

Compound Sentence (Kariumei Latrian) Kasiamhmei -

(1) Verb nchamc raphrapmei ethei khat laaganc pwni.

(a) Kasangay guang e, (b) Kadwmpou guang e.
= Kasangay lev Kadwmpou guang e.

(2) Subject kapumc khatna ethei khat laaganc pwni.

(a) Kadwnzik latrik pac e, (b) Kadwnzik tatdyn hy e.
= Kadwnzik latrik pac e khatnic tatdyn hy e.

(3) Object Kazaat khatna ethei khat laaganc pwni.

(a) Howgayliu rui tingthai laaguang e.
(b) Gaichuyliu rui tingthai tu e.
= Howgayliu rui tingthai laaguang e khatnic Gaychuyliu rui tu e.

(4) Kaganv thaymei nchamc ethei khat laaganc pwni.

(a) Kamei nthuanh lauthuan guang pwni.,
(b) Ai nthuan lauthuan tat pwni.
= Kamei nthuanh lauthuan guang pwni khatnic ai tat pwni.

(5) Object khatnic verb nchamcmei raana ethei object khat, verb khat laaganc pwni..

(a) Kalungthay ntyan tu e. (b) Kazaigay ntyan tu e.
= Kalungthay lev Kazaigay ntyan tu e.

Complex Sentence *(alamvmei latrian) khou nyngswmei Clause khat, khourui Subordinate Clause khat hamhethei khat khangsuangc geicna zau e.*

Compound Sentence *(Kariumei latrian) khouhei chalahmei latrianguay duanc kariulou tuang e, hamhethei alamvmei latrian guay kariulou tuang e.*

KATHAIDWAN-23

1. Clause tabui ta cho? Clause lev phrase tabui khiantnah bo? Latkamv tiina hy o.
2. Subordinate clause tabui ta cho? Kazaat azuh nai bo? Latkamv tiina hy o.
3. Noun clause, adjective clause khatnic adverb clause zamh latkamv khat khat hy o.
4. Latrian zaat azuh nai bo? Tabui tabui tei cho?
5. Complex Sentence akumhmei ta cho?
6. Compound Sentence kalwn dinc o.

CHADAADWAN
Test - 5

1. Grammar khou syntax hei tabui ta cho?
2. Word order tabui ta cho?
3. Tiiloumei Latrian guay zamh lwnliak dinc o.

   Latkamv:- Mi hei latrik ge = Subject + noun + e.

   (i) Kamang guang e.

   (ii) Kamei katan rui tat re.

   (iii) Mi hei atuang latrik ge.
4. (a) 'Kai' twmei latkaeng hei sinswna masculine gender, feminine gen der khatnic neuter gender piuna latrian khat khat hy o.

   (i) _____

   (ii) _____

   (iii) _____

   b) Agentive case khatnic instrumental case zamh latrian khat khat hy lana saa bammei case tei kabangc khou riatlou o.

   (i) _____

   (ii) _____

   (c) Ablative case tabui cho? Latkamv hy o.

(d) Kabangc khou tiiloumei latkaeng kanei hei Language lev kariang naimei latkaeng e. Latkamv tiina kabah hy o. Dictionary zaucna nang raana lat khou hy o, latkamv nic hy o.

(i) Stem

(ii) Etymology

5. Kabangc khou latrian guay khourui kapah patna hylou bammei Phrase guay hei tabui tabui phrase zaat cho dinc o.

a) Aseicdou Kandih daeng nkuaymei khou samcna bammei baansiam zamh bw peyna nai the

kandih daeng nkuaymei

baansiam bw

kandih daeng nkuaymei khou samcna bammei

b) Heiczu geihmei taanv hei aseic-nthuanh luai ngam mak ge.

heiczu geihmei

heiczu geihmei taanh hei

aseic-nthuanh

c) "Ai rui kamanv geic liangmei puat tei peyna neihlaana liu pwni e." Karuckhou tiiloumei latrian khou hei adverb phrase khat, noun phrase khat, adjective phrase khat nai e. Phrase zaat kathumh tei kapahpatna dinc o.

(i) Adverbial Phrase .....

(ii) Noun Phrase .....

(iii) Adjective Phrase .....

5.0 KACHUC BAMMEI LATRIAN ZAAT
(Functional Types of Sentence)

Ruanglat khou kachuc bammei, saanah bammei latrian nai e. Mi tatei **Kalwnlung Latrian** twna kaw e.

Tingmik pum kalwnlung kachuc bammei latrian kazaat padeih nai e. Mi guay kabangc khou kalangv kalangv swna hylou e.

(1) Declarative Sentence (Chalahna Ndauhpatmei Latrian)

Nsamv pariathriatna chalahna lat khat ndauhpatmei latrian - kalingmei ny kaling hamhmei ny lat khat nsamvpariatna saa ndauhpatmei latrian nai e.

Latkamv khang -

(i) Ai lau tat re.

(ii) Dui bun nkhan kan the.

(iii) Ai mitei thay e.

(iv) Mihei gaymei hypei e.

Mikumhmei guay tihei chalahna nsamvpariatna saapatmei **Declarative Sentence** twna kaw e.

(2) Negative Sentence (Hamhmei Ndauhmei Latrian)

Lat khat saapatmei khou kiuc hamhmei, nuh makmei, maekmei ndauhmei latrian nai e.

Latkamv khang :-

(i) Khouhei kai maek ge.
(ii) Kamei kai khou bam mak ge.
(iii) Mitei kaniw tuang hamh e.
(iv) Ai nkhuaimei lat saa lak ge.
(v) Nap tu kuangh e.

Mi kumhmei maekmei, swmakmei, hamhmei ndauhmei latrian tatei **Negative Sentence** kaw e.

(i) **'maek'** hei noun thei khou
sinsw e = Nap maek khe.

Adjective zamh degree tei kabangc khou hyloumei latrian guay hei zaucna kathai kho.

(ii) **'mak'** hei verb thei khou
sinsw e = Ai agaih tu mak ge.
(iii) **'hamh'** hei 'kiu e' zamh nchoumei khou **'hamh'** sinsw e.
Atuang hamh e, katuang de. Kabi hamh e, Gaylaa de.
(iv) **'lak'** hei guangni ganv (future) negative mark swna sinsw e.
Ai taanc dat lak khe. Kamei guang pwlak khe.
(v) **'kuangh'** hei 'gaatmei, biuh makmei, kagat tangh makmei' khou 'kuangh, kuangc' sinsw e
Ngay khou gan tu kuangh e. Lau nthyamna taanc kuangh e.
Puatc nthaym de, phungc kuangc e.

(3) Interogative Sentence (Thanvmei Latrian)

Aniw rui ramh khat lam thay niimei ganv khou thanv e, lathanv sinswna latsaa e.

Latkamv khang :-

(i) Tabui thu tat tu cho?
(ii) Akumhpui lat cho?
(iii) Nang gayna bam dai ?
(iv) Mwnpwang gay hak ge, gaymakna?
(v) Nap tu tang tha, tu mak hai?
(vi) Khoutei hypei nai bo, maekna?

Ruanglat khou 'tabui, akumh, thow, cho, bo, tha, dai' mi kumhmei guay hei piuna thanvmei latrian kasiamh e. Mi kumhmei latrian guay tihei thanvmei latrian **Interogative Sentence** twna kaw e.

Ruanglat khou Thanvmei Negative latrian khou 'mak' phaan 'mang' khatnic lak phaan 'lang' sinsw e.

Latkamv :-

(a) Nang phey tei laa ny laa mang?
(b) Nang taanv tei taanc ni ny taanc lang?

'Mang' khatnic 'lang' zamh latdaw swna daw pwkhou 'mec' khatnic "lec" sinsw e.

Latkamv :-

(a) Nang phey tei laa ny laa mang?
Dawmei - Ai laa mec.

(b) Nang taanv tei taanc ni ny taanc lang?
Dawmei - Ai taanc lec.

(4) Imperative Sentence (Thouhmei Latrian)

Ruanglat khou 'tat ro, guang o, taanc o, sw o' piuna lat saamei, thouhmei, katiumei, latdanv tiimei latrian sinsw e. Mi kumhmei latrian tatei **Imperative Sentence** kaw e.

Latkamv :-

(i) Nchamkai tho tat ro.
(ii) Adaeng khou guang o.
(iii) Laamh chadaa o.
(iv) Nkhuaimei lat saa riu.
(v) Ravguangc rui nang ta nduanghlou diu o.

KATHAIDWAN - 24

1. Kachuc bammei latrian zaat twmei hei tabui ta cho?
2. Kachuc bammei latrian zaat azuh nai cho? Tabuibui tei cho?
3. Kabangc khou hyloumei latrian guay hei tabuibui latrian cho? Dinc o.

(a) Ai lau tat re. _____

(b) Ai nkhuaimei lat saa lak ge. _____

(c) Nang gayna bam dai? _____

(d) Laamh chadaa o. _____

6.0 KIDAAMEI GAT
(Degree of Comparison)

6.0 KIDAAMEI GAT (Degree of Comparison)

Siimei, gaymei, ndeihmei, nkhucmei, saenghmei, duimei, katumcmei, nzaengmei, taanhmei, ruaihmei - mikumhmei guay hei kidaana saa nuh e.

Latkamv khang -

sii e, sii hian e, sii liang e
dui e, dui hian e, dui liang e
tanc e, tanc hian e, tanc liang e.

- Mi kumhmei guay tihei Degree of Comparison kaw e.

Kidaamei gat Degree of Comparison hei kagat kathumh nai e. Mikiu thu Positive Degree, Comparative Degree khatnic Superlative Degree - mi kathumh hei e.

Latkamv khang:-

Postive Degree	*Comparative Degree*	*Superlative Degree*
Anipou dui e. *(khatna)*	Anipou khangsuangc Dwanrey dui hian e *(kanei kak khou)*	Gayku dui liang e. *(Meic pangc khou)*

Kumna aniw rui thay e. Mikiu thu -

positive degree - **dui** e	(khat na ta)
comparative degree - **dui hian** e	(kanei kak khou)
superlative degree - **dui liang** e	(kaguayna pangc khou)

Mi tihei degree of comparison kaw e.

Degree of Comparison hei kazaat kanei nai e, mikiu thu Adjective Degree khatnic Adverb Degree - mi nei hei e.

6.1.0 ADJECTIVE DEGREE

(a) Lwmgay tuang abahthai ndeih e

(b) Kataapou tuang abahthai Lwmgay tuang khangsuangc ndeih hian e.

(c) Mary tuang abahthai ndeih liang e.

Latrian (a) khou hei Lwmgay tuang abahthai **ndeih e** twmei hei e - tihkic adih kamv ndeih cho twmei thu saa mak ge.

Latrian (b) khou Kataapou tuang abahthai khangsuangc **ndeih hian e** - twmei hei e. Lwmgay tuang lev Kataapou tuang abahthai tei kidaana saa e.

Latrian (c) khou Mary tuang abahthai hei kaguayna pangc khou **ndeih liang e** twmei hei e.

Kumna mi latrian kathumh khouhei kidaamei degree kathumh howpat re - **ndeih e, ndeih hian e, ndeih liang e** - twmei hei e. Mihei kabangc khou hyloumei kumcna zauc nuh e.

'*ndeih*' tihei Adjective zamh **Positive Degree** twna thay e.

'*ndeih hian*' tihei Adjective zamh **Comparative Degree** twna thay e

'*ndeih liang*' tihei Adjective zamh **Superlative Degree** twna thay e.

Kabangc khou **Adjective** zamh kidaamei asaekc zauc kho.

Positive Degree	***Comparative Degree***	***Superlative Degree***
Guinaipou tanc e.	Kabipou tanc hian e.	Kasangay tanc liang e.
Mazahbi mpang e.	Kailaagay mpang hian e.	Katabwan mpang liang e.
Pheibuay nthaan e.	Langhpanv nthaan hian e.	Luikangc nthaan liang e.
Daandi gay e .	Kachaekc gay hian e.	Kaphut gay liang e.

Karuc khou kathaimei khouhei howpat re. Mikiu thu tanc, mpang, nthaan, gay, guay hei noun zamh gunc ta ndauh e, mi guay hei adjective e. Mi degree of comparison khouhei Positive Degree latrian khou adjective tangv 'e' guang e, latkaeng baihmei guang mak ge. Comparative Degree latrian khou adjective tangv 'hian, hian' haap guang e, Superlative Degree latrian khou adjective tangv 'liang, liang' hei haap guang e. Kumna 'tanc e, tanc hian e, tanc liang e' twna adjective zamh chaengc, gat tei ndauh e. Mi kumhmei **adjective zamh kachaengc, kagat kidaana dinhmei tihei Adjective Degree twna kaw e.**

6.2.0 ADVERB DEGREE:

Adjective zamh degree naimei kumcna Adverb zamh positive degree, comparative degree khatnic superlative degree nai muay e.

Latkamv khang kabangc khouhei zauc kho

Positive Degree	*Comparative Degree*	*Superlative Degree*
Achwn tat katumc e.	Adai tat katumc hian e.	Abi tat katumc liang e
Azuna gari thou ranv e.	John gari thou ranv hian e.	Kabi gari thou ranv liang e.
Guaiphuap tat nzaeng e.	Kupui tat nzaeng hian e.	Tanyang tat nzaeng liang e.
Si pak khap e.	Asanh pak khap hian e.	Kamang pak khap liang e.

Karuc khou kathaimei khouhei howpat re. Mikiu thu Comparative Degree khou adjective tangv hian, hian haap guang e, Superlative Degree khou adjective tangv hei liang, liang hei haap guang e.

KATHAIDWAN-25

1. Degree of Comparison tabui ta cho? Degree of Comparison gat kathaek azuh nai cho? Tabui tabui tei cho?
2. Degree of Comparison kazaat azuh cho? Tabui tabui tei cho?
3. Adjective Degree tabui ta cho? Adjective Degree kathumh lwn tei hyna nchin o.
4. Kabangc khou hyloumei hei taanc suak go:

Positive Degree	*Comparative Degree*	*Superlative Degree*
Gay	_____	_____
Nchumh	_____	_____
Sii	_____	_____

5. Adverb Degree tabui ta cho ? Adverb Degree kathumh lwn hyna nchin o.
6. Kabangc khou hyloumei hei taanc suak go.

Positive Degree	Comparative Degree	Superlative Degree
Katumc e	_____	_____
Ranv e	_____	_____
Tanc e	_____	_____

7.0 LAT MATAT HIAK

(Punctuation Marks)

Aniw rui latsaa pwkhou nkingmei nunc rui kabah thay khang latrian dak dak khou, luaimei khou ding khath ding khat re. Mi na hamhna khwan ranv maih, nau maihna nic saa e. Miguay hei lat saa pwkhou, hykey pwkhou khatnic pac pwkhou matatpat nuh khang kahiak hylou e, madanclou e. Mi tatei **Lat Matat Hiak** (Punctuation Marks) kaw e.

Mi matat hiak hei sinsw mak gethei lat kabah tei laa kadat kadaeng nuh e. Kumna lat hei hykey pwkhou kabangc khou tiiloumei matat hiak guay hei piu e.

(1)	Full Stop Hiak	(.)	(8)	Quotation Hiak	("....")
(2)	Comma Hiak	(,)	(9)	Inverted Comma	('....')
(3)	Colon Hiak	(:)	(10)	Das	(--)
(4)	Semicolon Hiak	(;)	(11)	Hyphen	(-)
(5)	Thanv Hiak	(?)	(12)	Slash/Oblique	(/)
(6)	Ruph Hiak	(!)	(13)	Bracket	( ) { } [ ]
(7)	Apostrophe Hiak	(')	(14)	Asterick	(*)

7.1.0 Full Stop Hiak (Rowding) (.)

Mi hiak tihei Rowding kaw e, British English khou Full Stop, American English khou Period kaw e. Nthuihmei latrian khat luai pwkhou rowding (full stop) rowlou e.

Latkamv:-

Kamei ata nzian e.
Nchumhmei rui rihngam e.

7.2.0 Comma (,)

Mi hiak tihei **Comma** kaw e. Mihei kabangc khou hyloumei hei kumcna sinsw e.

(a) Ramh zanc rian, latkaeng rian hy pwkhou latkaeng langv tithay khang hy e, tihkic 'khatnic' hu khou thu hy mak ge.

Latkamv:-

Haenghmei, mwmei, ndiakcmei khatnic nzinhmei.
Phay, baanh, mik khatnic mwang.

(b) Phrase hamhethei clause kalangv khak khang comma sinsw e.

Latkamv:-

Taanv taanc chuy the, nggaanv nunc, lak hak khwang the, kai biak karih mak khou, matat khat, bamvduan khou hei dungckeyna nthaekc la ho.

(c) Phrase hamhethei clause hu khatnic thei khou chamv haap kuan nii ethei comma sinsw e.

Latkamv: -

He Puchingh Khow rav le, suc e mang cho, pat tho, laa tu tho, ata.

(d) Lwn dinhmei, huthwangmei latkaeng tangv comma sinsw e.

Latkamv :-

(i) Hu khou dingbammei hei, ai saamei, Thanzik kiu the.

(ii) Tingsaengc dyng the, nang zaw how makme.

(e) Latrian tei lev saa kazwanmei latthanv tei lev kalangv khak khang comma sinsw e.
Latkamv:-

(i) Mi phey hei kamanv geic changh e, kumhmakna cho ?

(ii) Nang Luangbamei dyng e, nchumh dai ?

(f) Pary rahmei khatnic meic khat lat saatow pwkhou comma sinsw e.

Latkamv:-

(i) 'Guang dat zaic o,' twna kamei saalou e.

(ii) Disrael rui saa khwan e, 'Lat nsunh rui lungning nsunhmei nunc lung ta tikabiu e.'

7.3.0 Colon Hiak (:)

Colon hiak hei list khat hykey ni khou, lat khat saatow nii khou, latkamv tiina hy khou khatnic kalam tiina hymei khou sinsw e. Colon hei dash kazauhna nic hy e.

Latkamv :-

(a) Puatc laa nimei guay:

(i) gannamv,

(ii) gannaeng thauc,

(iii) maikhiat .

(b) Coach rui saaloumei lat :

'Zipthau zaic lana pak khath tw o, guang dat lana duilow o, mi tangv guaihnoudui zangv o.'

(c) Latkamv :- kai, lau, thing, dui.

(d) Kalam :- Chinghlau taanhmei khou gaengmei-chipmei.

7.4.0 Semicolon Hiak (;)

Comma khangsuangc ding saengc maih e, tihkic saapat dat nuangc nimei ramding khou semicolon hy e.

Latkamv :-

(a) Naumei ta thu discharge swlou the; tihkic gay nthan the twna saa khang thay mak ge.

(b) Kamei lu suan chuy e, kathiak nic howgay e; kumtina nkingmei meic geic raphrap be.

7.5.0 Thanv Hiak (?)

Ruanglat khou mi tihei Thanv Hiak·kaw e. English khou Interrogation Mark kaw e, Question Mark nic kaw e. Lat thanvmei latkaeng khatnic latrian luaimei khou Thanv Hiak hei hy e.

Latkamv :-

(a) Tabui latrik cho?

(b) Kamei tat kan tha?

(c) Tabui? Akumhna? Tiamh?

7.6.0 Ruph Hiak (!)

Mi hiak tihei Ruanglat khou Ruph Hiak kaw e. British English khou Exclamation Mark kaw e, American English khou Exclamation Point kaw e. Charynmei, neihlaamei, pingmei, karaengmei, lunghpuamhmei, kadathdatmei chuna, howna lungning khourui rahphuth twpatmei latkaeng khatnic latrian luaimei khou Ruph Hiak hy e.

Latkamv :-

(a) Is ! Zei raana ! ... Tabui lwn !
(b) Apui le ! Luai the, luai the !
(c) As ! Zeihlat ramgai ! Gay hak ge bo !

7.7.0 Apostrophe Hiak (')

Latkaeng khat khou kahiak khat hamhethei khwanlangv khat hy mak gethei mi twn tei Apostrophe Hiak hylou e khatnic mitei rui latkaeng kabac tei thu tinai tanhtanlou e.

Latkamv :-

(a) Ch'ryn e, Ravguangc ramzian hei.
(b) Pou' Nang chwn e ata.
(c) Tingsei douc tingpuk 'kauhna 'sik ge tei.

7.8.0 Quotation Marks ("....")

Mi hiak tihei Quotation Mark kaw e. Mi hiak hei meic khat rui saaloumei lat tei kahak rac pwkhou sinsw e.

Latkamv :-

(a) Kamei rui saa khwan e, "Nang thu ai rui lwm nuhmei pam kiu e."
(b) "Ai hei kandihmei riw e" twna Jisu rui saa khwan e.

7.9.0 Inverted Comma (' ... ')

Mi hiak tihei Inverted Comma kaw e, Quotation Mark nic kaw e. Latkaeng hamhethei latrian khat lam khou soucna dinc pwkhou mi latkaeng hamhethei latrian tatei Inverted Comma ' ... '.kathei kahu khou goulouna saa e, hy e.

Latkamv :-

(a) Grammar khou 'kamei' hei pronoun e.
(b) 'Mihei gay liang e' twmei hei superlative degree khou saa tuang e.
(c) Nang mwang khou 'Ai, ai' twmei saa geic langv e.

7.10 Dash Hiak (--)

(a) Case nchamcmei latkaeng guay hamhethei latkaeng guay ta lwn dinhmei latkaeng hu khatnic thei khou Dash sinsw e.

Latkamv :-

(i) Puatc guay - thingkhuk, pheybaan, mu-lai, mi kumhmei guay lou kaduailou bam the.

(ii) Ai rui saa kanmei - khwanlangv, latkaeng, latrian guay tei kalwn thay tha?

(iii) Bible khou - Ravguangc, Jisu, Bumaengh Nthanmei, Seitaan; paapc, theihmei, ringcsuangmei, tingkauh - mi kumhmei lam guay hei hylou e.

(b) Latrian kak khou kabamv chaa makna latkaeng guang thiat rethei mi latkaeng hu khoutei Dash sinsw e.

Latkamv :-

(i) Kaiphwnnambut, nang saamei twn tei - tingthaibang how mak ge.

(ii) Kazaigay - Chaengdaimeipu lev kapam khat tei aseic adaeng khou guang pwni.

(c) Baih baihmei puatc zanc hamhethei baih baihmei latkaeng kanei kathumh saa lana, mi guay tatei saa kariuna lat khat ndauh pwkhou dash sinsw e.

Latkamv :-

(i) Camera, TV, radio - kaguayna kamanv kunghmei puat raana e.

(ii) Taanc, suan, nchow, tat - mi guay hei verb raana e.

7.11.0 Hyphen Hiak (-)

Hyphen Hiak hei Dash khangsuangc dui e. Mihei sinswmei thiak tei kabangc khou duina hylou e.

(a) Latkaeng khat kanei kariumei latkaeng (compound word) hy pwkhou Hyphen sinsw e.

Latkamv :-

(i) Thing-dui kamvryan e.

(ii) Tu-zangv khang maek ge.

(iii) Guaipuang-takuanh, kaithei-kaihu, nap-gan.

(b) Latrian hy pwkhou latkaeng hy luai makna karian kalaih ethei khwanlangv luaimei khoutei Hyphen hy e.

Latkamv :-

(i) Nang thu kaibam langvna lau-puk lwn thay mak khe.

(ii) Kamei hei aniw ta zay-loumeipu e.

(c) Latkaeng zamh khwanlangv (syllable) guay kalangv kalangv swna hy pwkhou Hyphen sinsw e.
Latkamv :-

(i) Kailuangcmei = Kai-luangc-mei.

7.12.0 Bracket ( )

Mi hiak tihei Bracket kaw e, Parenthesis nic kaw e. Bracket sinswmei thiak asaekc kabangc khou hylou e.

(a) Latkaeng hamhethei kalam tei dinc nthanlou khang Bracket sinsw e.

Latkamv :-

(i) Kadwmpou (kapy nkymeipu tei) nang kai khou gut bo ?

(ii) Taudaic (Daicluangc khou naimei) tei maansei guangna zauc e.

(b) Kasing hy khou mitei tithay nthan khang latkaeng hy pwkhou Bracket sinsw e.

Latkamv :-

(i) Daengkaa 100/- (Daengkaa phaykhat) tiiguang o.

(c) Bracket hei kazaat kathumh nai e. Mi guay kiu thu -

(i) First Bracket ( )
(ii) Second Bracket { }
(iii)Third Bracket [ ]

7.13.0 Gaanchuangcna Maengc (*) (Asterick)

Mi maengc tihei Gaanchuangcna Maengc, English khou Asterick Mark kaw e. Mihei latrik hymei khou kabangc khou hyloumei thiak guay khou sinsw e.

(a) Latrian khou latkaeng hamhethei zanh asaekc laaganc ethei mi latkaeng phaan tei Gaanchuangcna Maengc sinsw e.

Latkamv :-

Taanv ranvna taanhmei nunc *** *** syan mphang geic the khatnic kaniw khang syan swna *** tii kan e.

(b) Latrik hymei nunc rui footnote tithay khang Gaanchuangcna Maengc sinsw e.

7.14.0 Dot (...)

Mi tihei Dot kaw e, Ellipsis nic kaw e. Mihei kabangc khou hyloumei hei kumcna sinsw e.

(a) Title, qualification duina hy pwkhou Dot sinswna hy e.

Latkamv :-

C.M., D.C., B.A., M.A.

(b) Latrik hymei khou, kathaidwan khou, chadaadwan khou latkaeng hy khang nsaa kak (blank/gap) louna mi khoutei dot dot hylou e.

Latkamv:-

Kai khou nruaihmei khouringc ta ..... kaw e. (kiruai/suc/zouc)

(c) Latrik hymei nunc rui gaanvkhat rui hymei hamhethei saaloumei latrian kahak tei laana hy pwkhou mi latrian tei kapwmna laa makpui ganv khou sinsw e.

Latkamv:-

Jisu rui saa khwan e, "Ai hei chaeng e ... ringhmei e." Mi kumhmei ganv khou dot kathumh na sinsw khangh e.

7.15.0 Slash/Oblique (/)

Mi hiak tihei Slash kaw e, Oblique nic kaw e. Mihei latkaeng khat lev khat hamhethei phrase khat lev khat sw ntam khang sinsw e. Internet khou khatnic e-mail address khou elements guay ti-ntam khang hy e.

Latkamv :-

(a) Latkaeng sw-ntam khang sinsw e.
Nggaanvmei/Ntumei/Maypu/Maypui

(b) Internet khatnic e-mail address khou sinsw e.
http://www.oup.co.tml/elt/

KATHAIDWAN-28

1. Rowding (Full Stop) kage naimei twn hylou o.
   Ravguangc hei zianthaymei e Kamei thu kalung khat sihnic puamh mak ge Kaluay kaganv sii mak ge Kamei hei nsyang ndan mak ge Ravguangc hei meic swluai mak ge rairiu mak ge Kamei thu maansei khang gay khang na ning e.
2. Comma kage naimei twn hylou o.
   Gin gaanv padeih guang e. Kaniw zanc John Jibon Joy khatnic Jolly kaw e. Kaniw dinhmei raana e. School khou kaniw rui English mathematics Manipuri Ruanglat khatnic history dinclou e. Meicringhmei nunc khang kai lau nap bi kataana kage nai e.
3. Ruph Hiak akumh khou piu tuang cho? Latkamv kazauhna hy o.
4. Apostrophe akumh khou piu tu cho? Latkamv kazauhna hy o.
5. Quotation Mark sinswna latrian khat kanei hy o.
6. Kabangc khou hyloumei hiak guay hei kazanc kanei kanei nai e.
   Mi guay tei hy o.

(a)	(?)	.....	.....
(b)	(!)	.....	.....
(c)	(/)	.....	.....
(d)	( )	.....	.....
(e)	("...")	.....	.....
(f)	(...)	.....	.....
(g)	(.)	.....	.....

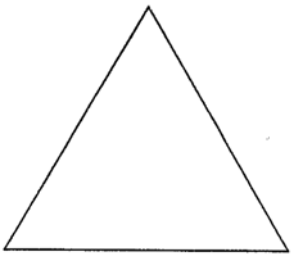
8.0 KABAH
(Semantic)

Aniw rui lungning khou makumhmei tei ndauhpat khang lat hei sinsw e. Sinsw bammei lat kabah kiu tho lungning khou makumh bammei tei the. Kumhpui zaengrui 'kabah' twmei kiu puatc khat ta kumcna kalwn nchin ngam mak ge.

Aniw rui puatc guay zanc phuaklou e, kawlou e. Latkamv khang saa pwkhou, aniw rui 'dui' twmei latkaeng hei puatc akhat zanc swna kawlou the. 'Dui' twmei latkaeng hei saa pwkhou hamhethei hy pwkhou 'dui' kawmei puat tatei thaynah e. Tihkic, 'dui' twmei latkaeng kabah hei tabui cho twethei akumhna daw nina ? 'Dui' twmei latkaeng hei saa pwkhou hamhethei chu pwkhou lungning khou makumhmei, - mi puat tei lev kariang naimei lungning khou makumhna thaymei khat pat re. **Mi makumhna thaymei tei e kabah twmei kiu.** Kumhpui zaengrui puatc, latkaeng khatnic kabah - mi kathumh hei kariang nai e. Latkaeng tei lev kariang naimei puatc tei lev kariu lana lungning khou ningpatmei makum tei mi latkaeng zamh kabah kiu the twna saa nii e. Kumna thaurey douc rui lwnliak naimei puatc zamh kabah hei kabangc khou hyloumei hei kumcna nchin guang e.

8.1 Latkaeng Kabah

Latkaeng Kabah
(Lungning khou Makumhmei)



Latkaeng Lwnliak

Puatc hamh ethei
kariang naimei makum

Kalwn kaliak nai thuai makmei, lungning makum khou na naimei latkaeng guay twmei thu daihmei, nthyammei, kheyliak, swchuymei - mi kumhmei

latkaeng guay kabac hei akumhna karuc khou hyloumei maengc hei rui dinc nuh nina cho? Aniw rui 'swchuymei' twmei latkaeng hei saa pwkhou khatnic chu pwkhou latkaeng hei lev kariang naimei maansei kheyliak asaekc lungning makum rui thay raph tw e. Mi kumhmei kheyliak tei nic hylou bammei maengc 'puatc' twmei tei the twna saa khang di the. Kumhpui zaengrui 'puatc' twmei hei 'swchuymei' twmei latkaeng hei lev, mi latkaeng zamh kabah tei lev kariang naimei kheyliak tatei nic tian twna thay e twna laapui tac di the.

8.1.1 Kabah Zaat

Kabah hei kazaat geic e. Mi khou hei kabiswna kabah zaat chanei lam khou kathai kho. Kazaat chanei kiu tho - (1) Kabiswmei puiruhnac rui thay bammei kabah, (2) Puatc gunc zauc lana laamei kabah, (3) Charay swmei kabah, (4) Latkaeng lukaeng rui ndauhmei kabah, (5) Makumh baicna laamei kabah, (6) Latkaeng baihmei lev kariu khourui patmei kabah khatnic (7) Saa niimei lam lev kariang naimei kabah.

8.1.2 Kabi swmei puiruhnac rui thaymei *kabah*

Latkaeng khatnic latrian zamh kabiswmei puiruhnac rui thay bammei chalahmei, nkun nkev makmei, nsamvpariathna ndauhpatmei kabah nai e. Mihei maansei swmei lungning ndauh pat khang kabiswmei thiak ge. Kabah hei latkaeng thaek khou, latkaeng tei lev kariang naimei puat lwnliak, kagunc nchamc makmei naimei - mi kumhmei khourui thay ngam e.

Latkamv: -

Karacpeic = maansei +nggaanvmei hamhmei + gaanthauh.
Nggaanv = maansei + nggaanvmei + gaanthauh hamhmei.

Mi latkaeng kanei zamh kagunc kathumh hei kidaa pwkhou khatna thu nchamc lana kanei thu nchamc mak ge. Mi kumcna khiannahmei naimei khouhei rui karacpeic lev nggaanv kaney zamh kabah nchamc makmei naimei thay ngam e.

Latrian thaek khou - latkaeng zamh morpheme khatnic phoneme thaek khou swbak pwkhou katuang katuang kabah tei kalwnlung swna nai e, khatnic latkaeng thaek khou zauc pwkhou subject, object, verb kumhmei hei latriak theilayna kalwan chaana hui kariulou pwkhou puiruhnac rui thaymei kabah tei laatow e.

Latkamv :-

Ai kata thay e = subject + object + verb

8.1.3 Puatc gunc zaucna laatowmei kabah

Ramh khat ta thaymei latkaeng khat hei mi ramhkhat kahak hamhna puatc zamh kagunc lev kariang tinailouna laamei kabah nai e.

Latkamv :-

Gaythuih hei kuanniam di the.

Mi latrian khou naimei 'kuanniam' hei meicguayna rui thay bammei kuanniam zamh kabah tei hamh e. Kuanniam gunc azuh nai e khaengvlouthaymei, latpiumei, mpangmei, mikumhmei guay hei e. Gaythuih hei kuanniam kumcna mpang e twmei kabac lev nchamcna saamei latrian bam nuh e. Kum ethei kuanniam kabac hei puatc gunc zauc lana laamei kabah e. Mi kumhmei kabah hei kaganv kaganv theilayna, charuangc khatnic chapriak thei layna nchamc makmei nai e.

8.1.4 Charay, karaana zamh kabah

Lat khat khou limhmei azuh nai e. Latkamv khang saa kho. *Kamei nwm tatmei e. Kai rui nkay e. Pwangringh zaw how nii e.* Mi latrian guay khou 'nwm tatmei' hei nwmbangc ngouhbangc tatmei ta hamh e - mbinh rihou ta e; 'kai' twmei hei lunghmei kai ta hamh e - chanaa-punav, meicbaih hamhmei ta e; 'pwangringh' twmei hei nwmbangc khou thaumei kathai haenghmei bang ta tei hamh e - nzian-nguihmei nggaanvpu ta e.

Kaganv lev kariang naimei khou 'nthei, hu' hei guangni ganv ta thaymei khou nic sinsw e, tatkan ganv ta thaymei khou nic sinsw e. Latbamv latbamv thei layna kabah tei thay e.

8.1.5 Latsav-luswan rui ndauhmei kabah

Lat hei saathay mak pwkhou gay hakmei lat sihnic siimei kabac khou laalou nuh e. Lunghpuamcna, mphutna saamei latkaeng hei kabah baicna ndauhmei nai e - gaymei lat tei siimei kabac khou saa e.

Latkamv :-

(a) Nang hei, zouh mbaana chaengluang khou kahai tat bam rapna, howgay the da ! Meic zaw gay dyng the.
(Zauclou nii makna, howsi e, meic zaw si e twna saamei)

(b) Eh , nang hei aheih dyng the he, thay dyng the he.
(Thaypui lwn swmei ta mphutna saamei)

(c) Nangniw rui huayneylou khourui ai gay dat the.
(Thuanckuna, kwnna saamei)

Karuc khou (a) khou 'howgay the' hei howsi e twtuang e, 'zaw gay the' twmei hei zaw sii e twtuang e. (b) khou 'aheih dyng the, thay dyng the' hei aheih changh the, thay changh the twtuang hamh e. (c) khou huayneyloumei nunc ta thuanckuna saa tuang e. Kamei gay datmei hei 'huayneylou khourui' bam nuh e, puc tu tina gay dat bam tuang kho nic nuh e.

Kumna latkaeng kabac hei mphutna saamei, nuinuna saamei, zaenghuayna saamei khatnic thuanckuna saamei latsav-luswan theilayna latkaeng zamh kabah baic baicna pat nuh e.

8.1.6 Lungning makum baihmei khat khou laamei kabah

Lat saamei khou hamhethei latrik hymei khou lungning makum akhat ndauhpat pwkhou nkingmei hamhethei pahmei rui baihmei makum khou laatowmei kabac nai e. Hymei (poet) rui latkaeng khat sinswna hy pwkhou kabah baicna laa nuhmei latkaeng azuh nic nai e. Charuangc khou saasipui lat tei ntheihna saapui latkaeng azuh nai e. Mikumhmei ta thaymei lungning makum guay ta 'kabah baihmei khat khou laamei' twna thay e.

Latkamv :-

(a) Kamei ramhchaeng tat kan di he. = (latrine gutmei)
(b) Kanow ganthiangc bam e. = (nah puanhmei)
(c) Bible khou 'Songs of Solomon' kawmei latrik hei meic meic theilayna kabah baic baicna pac pat nuh e

- Hymeipu Solomon kapumc kahak lungning makum,
- Ravchap dinhmei nunc lungning makum,
- Pahmei chabwan nunc lungning makum.

8.1.7 Latkaeng baihmei lev kariu khourui patmei kabah

Kabangc khou tiiloumei latrian guay hei zauc kho.

(a) Mi ramc khoutei meic kathw kathamv sihnic how mak ge.
(b) Pei khou tunaa-pangnaa lat zaat saa riu.
(c) Thanchuyliu tho zeithangc khav di the.

Mi latrian guay khou hei -

(a) khou 'kathw kathamv' twmei hei 'how mak ge' lev kariuna 'khatsihnic bammak ge' twmei kabac tipat re.
(b) khou 'tunaa-pangnaa' twmei hei 'lat zaat' lev kariu pwkhou 'kachangc kadi makmei lat' twmei kabac tipat re.

(c) khou tunacpui 'Thanchuyliu' lev 'zeithangc khav' kariuna 'meic laatow thuy makmei, kagunc kagac naimei tunacpui e' twmei kabac tipat re.

8.2 Dictionary zamh kabah khatnic Grammar zamh kabah

Lat lwnliak, structure kathaimei nunc rui kabah tihei 'dictionary zamh kabah' khatnic 'grammar zamh kabah' twna baic baicna tipat re. Grammar zamh kabac tihei kalwn kaliak kabac twna nic thay e.

Kabiswmei parts of speech zamh latkaeng guay kabac ta dictionary zamh kabah kaw e. Kabi swraumei grammar category guay kabac ta grammar zamh kabah kaw e. *Grammar zamh kabah* twmei khouhei kabangc khou tiiloumei guay hei kazauh e.

(a) Tense, number, case kumhmei kabi swraumei grammar category guay kabac.

(b) Subject, object, kagunc ndauhmei - mi kumhmei grammar rui tiimei kabac.

(c) nchumhna lungning makum ndauhmei, thanvmei, latthouhmei, zaenghuaymei - mi guay ta thaymei khatnic latrian kazaat tipatmei - mi kumhmei guay kabac.

Dictionary zamh kabah twmei hei kabi swmei parts of speech latkaeng guay karaana zamh naimei kabac tatei e. *Grammar zamh kabah* twmei hei rui latkaeng khou khatnic latrian khou sinsw keymei ganv khou ndauhpatmei kabac ta tei e.

Latkamv :-

Katuang latrik amaan kan the.
Mi latrian khouhei -
Dictionary zamh kabah naimei latkaeng guay = kamei, latrik, amaan
Grammar zamh kabac naimei langv = tuang (kaipouc thaymei kabac), = kan the (perfect aspect).

Kumna 'Katuang' genetive case re, 'latrik' twmei hei verb zamh subject ge. 'amaan' twmei hei verb, 'kan the' twmei hei rui perfect aspect e twna thay bammei hei nic *grammar zamh kabah* kiu e.

KATHAIDWAN - 26

1. Latkaeng zamh kabah twmei hei tabui ta cho? Hyna dinc nthan o.
2. Kabiswmei kabah zaat chanei nai e. Miguay kiu tabui tabui tei cho?
3. Kabiswmei puiruhnac rui thaymei 'kabah' twmei hei tabui ta cho? Mi kumhmei kabah hei latkaeng thaek khou khatnic latrian thaek khou aniw rui akumhna thay tu cho?
4. Kabangc khou tiiloumei kabah zaat guay zamh latkamv khat khat tii o.
   (a) Puatc gunc zauc lana laatowmei kabah;
   (b) Charay swmei, karaana zamh kabah;
   (c) Latsav-luswan rui ndauhmei kabah;
   (d) Lungning makum baihmei khat khou laamei kabah;
   (e) Latkaeng baihmei lev kariu khourui patmei kabah;
   (f) Saa nimei lam lev kariang naimei kabah;
5. Dictionary zamh kabah khatnic grammar zamh kabah twmei kanei hei latkamv tiina khiannahmei dinc o.

8.3.0 Kabah Nchamcmei Lakaeng
(Synonyms)

nrwanmei	-	puanghmei
riliuc	-	tunacpui
pamvzwna	-	nah
phyan-ryan	-	nchamcmei pam
raenghbangc	-	kaidaeng
laulwan	-	lauchaeng
kaithei	-	kailat
kaihu	-	kaimav
kariumei	-	ntinmei
khwmswmei	-	nowkawmei, mihmei
tampy	-	kaikhunh
gin	-	tasangmei
chagai chaguymei	-	kamunsuhmei
meic baih hamhmei	-	kai khatnamei
naaraa	-	alauc
lanv	-	khiwkhingh

lauhmei	-	tumei
lawmei	-	khaenghmei
mphaanmei	-	nthyammei
laupuk	-	lauzaengc
tatmei	-	kummei
si	-	raenghbungh

8.4.0 Lakaeng Kabah Nchoumei
(Antonyms)

alauc	-	gaanvthauh
karacpouc	-	karacpeic
pui	-	pu
pouh	-	neih
ntumei	-	nggaanvmei
chaphwmmei luc	-	chaphwmmei khangc
tunacpui	-	nggaanvpu
daihmei	-	nthyammei
nsunhmei	-	pariuhmei
saenghmei	-	duimei
nchumei	-	chaenghmei
ndeihmei	-	nkhucmei
bumhmei	-	nsamvmei
ntakmei	-	mpangmei
nyngtyngmei	-	mpangmei
ting	-	mpwan
dui	-	mai
minhmei	-	nzimei
ntakmei	-	nggungmei
thing	-	tauh
rui	-	riang
mpeih	-	nriangc
kakw	-	kagaamc
kagi	-	kathing
kalat	-	kalu
Guaipuang	-	takuanh
kamang	-	chagamh

suc	-	zouc
nkhuaih	-	nrik
si	-	guak
tingpuk	-	kandih
tingkauh	-	maikwam
mbaanv	-	taruaih
bw	-	neih
gaanhmei	-	zinghmei
laukhwan	-	tingzyn
kalaan	-	zingbangc
gaymei	-	siimei
latpiumei	-	latliammei
ntwnmei	-	mbehmei
ntyngmei	-	nkuanmei
pagimei	-	ntyngmei
nzihmei	-	nkhuaimei
nzih zunhzunmei	-	nkhuai palatmei
phay	-	baanh
nzat	-	mbai
bi	-	ruh
nap	-	gan
napkuak	-	gankuak
tam	-	chaamphut
ntey	-	thaisuh
tumei	-	zangvmei
kadukkeymei	-	ngguakcpatmei
phaaloumei	-	nlicpatmei
nkhuai	-	nzih
khuay	-	zi
nchumhmei	-	nkhuaimei
kai	-	lau
kai	-	saamh

kailuangc	-	rwan
kai phui bangc	-	nwm bangc
kaithei	-	kaihu
kabangc	-	karuc
kakhum	-	kathi

8.5.0 Lakaeng Nchamc ki Kabah Bahmei
(Homonyms)

Kang	-	kapang
kang	-	(si) kang
kang	-	kang - *kang loumei (meic ta)*
khaa	-	(pykhaa) khaa
khaa	-	khaa luai
khav	-	dui khou bammei khav
khav	-	thaengv
khuaih	-	kasat naimei
khuaih	-	duilow khou sinswmei (nkhuaih)
khuaih	-	khuaihmei, laathaumei
gah	-	gahling
gah	-	guh gah
gah	-	gui, zaic
gai	-	thingbang gai e
gai	-	kakai gai kamang e
gay	-	gay hak ge
gay	-	kakhac gay e
gan	-	gan (nap gan)
gan	-	thingchy khou nrui gan bam e.
ganv	-	kaganv, ganv gayna kai tangc o de.
ganv	-	luay ganv

ganc	-	ganc o, ganc key o.
ganc	-	nggaanv ganc e.
ganh	-	ganh khang nzav e.
ganh	-	tingthinc ganh key e.
ngganv	-	ngguakcmei, nruymei
ngganv	-	mik ngganvmei
pu	-	pu (pui,pu)
pu	-	luaih, riang
pw	-	dui luangc rahmei
pw	-	mpeih pw
puc	-	puc bwan
puc	-	suh khou nau khou tumei puc.
phei	-	napthw gi
phei	-	baanh rui phei e
bang	-	nngeic puat bang e.
bang	-	tingthai bang e.
bangv	-	gin bangv e.
bangv	-	thingchy bangv e.
bangc	-	guaih bangc e.
bangc	-	guangh kai bangc sw kan the.
bangh	-	bangh swmei
bangh	-	riang rui banghmei
mai	-	mai chuangc e.
mai	-	kamang mai
mai	-	kailuangc mai (kachwm, kamai)
maih	-	amuh, ravzauhmei
maih	-	gay maih e.
mih	-	paan sow khou sinmei mih
mih	-	tunac mih khang kating dui
raa	-	nruay raa
raa	-	kai raa key e

rav	-	ravsic
rav	-	lainac, ravpuat
rav	-	phaamh, thav
rac	-	pary rac
rac	-	nchiat rac
rac	-	dui luangc rac, chaeng tat rac
rah	-	kamang rah e
rah	-	rah (ra), rahra
ri	-	tat ri, thay ri, saa ri
ri	-	khav ri, tingthai ri, mwn ri
ry	-	syan rymei
ry	-	suc ry, guaih ry
rih	-	rih, suc-rih
rih	-	rih-ri, rihri
lai	-	nap lai, gan lai
lai	-	phey lai e.
lai	-	khuaih bou lai e.
lai	-	kailuangc lai e, rih lai e
lay	-	a thei lay o
lay	-	guaih lay e, suc lay e.
lay	-	ntumei ta
laic	-	pheybaan laic e.
laic	-	ntanhzwan laic e.
laic	-	dui laiclou e.
hi	-	Meic hi khou sow e.
hi	-	Bi hi e.
hui	-	mpinh hui e.
hui	-	meiczaeng hui e.

KATHAIDWAN - 27

1. Kabah nchamcmei hy o.

lauchaeng .....

naaraa .....

khiwkhingh .....

si .....

tampy .....

kaidaeng .....

2. Latkaeng nchoumei hy o.

alauc .....

ting .....

nkhuaimei .....

kai .....

kakhum .....

phaaloumei .....

3. Tiiloumei nchamcmei latkaeng hei kabah kanei kathumh nai ngam e, kabah kanei kanei hy o.

kang ....

khav ....

mai ....

ri ....

rac ....

9.0 LATMI

Grammar khou **Kabah** hei tabui ta cho twmei hei class seven khou ncham kan the. Kumna mi khouhei kabah lev kariang naina **Latmi** hei kathai kho.

Latmi tabui ta cho ?

Ruanglat khou latkaeng thei layguangmei latkaeng nai e. Mi latkaeng hei karaana kabah tipat ngammei nai e, kabah tipat ngam makmei nic nai e. Tihkic latkaeng khat tangv saahaaplou pwkhou latkaeng kabah tei ti-nthuihlou e, kami titangclou e. Mi kumcna haapguangmei latkaeng tihei **latmi** kaw e. Latmi kazauhna lat saa pwkhou nking bampui mei lungning mik khoutei saa bammei lwnlung tei tihowlou e. Mitei kumcna Latmi kazauhna lat hylou pwkhou pac bampui mei lungning mik khoutei hylou bammei lwnlung tei tihowlou e. Kumna Latmi rui lat tatei kabah tiguangtangc chuylou e. Mitei aniw zauc kho.

Latkamv :-

Kamik kakhip be.	Kamik kakhip **riphrip** e.
Kamwang ahah e.	Kamwang ahah **lahla** e.
Kahi lik ge.	Kahi lik **sikhsik** ge.
Rah e.	Rah **riauhriau** e.
Kabung nke e.	Kabung nke **ginhgin** e.

Karuc khou tiiloumei latrian guay khouhei *riphrip, lahla, sikhsik, riauhriau, ginhgin* twmei guay hei Latmi raana the. Mi latmi hei haaplouna saa pwkhou lat tei mik khou tihowna kabah ti-nthuihlou e, kami titangclou e twmei aniw how e.

Latmi hei latkaeng nchamc sihnic saa bammei kadwn swmei latkaeng theilayna kabah nic baic baic e.

Latkamv:-

khehkhe	Kadai *khehkhe* mec. Kathiulaa *khehkhe* e.
rimhrim	Nuic *rimhrim* e. Dui chungc rimhrim e.
runhrun	Kamik tanguih *runhrun* e. Syan-khuangh hiw *runhrun* e.

suthsut	Karym namh *suthsut* re. Sin *suthsut* re.
taphtap	Tat ri *taphtap* be. Dui zow *taphtap* be.

Karuc khou hyloumei guay hei zauc pwkhou Ruanglat saamei, hymei, pahmei khou latmi hei rui lat ta kabah ti-nthuihlou e twmei how e. Kumna latmi hei Ruanglat khou kabiswmei khat re twna laa e.

Latmi hei kazaat kanei nai e - (1) ***Adverb of Adverb*** **Latmi** khatnic (2) ***Adverb of Adjective*** **Latmi** mi nei hei e.

(1) ***Adverb of Adverb*** **Latmi**

Kamei ata tat ri *taphtap* be.
Kadwnbi taanv taanc chuy *khithkhit* re.
Howgayliu Lu suan kasic *tanhtan* e.

Karuc khou **Latmi** *taphtap, khithkhit, tanhtan* hei tabui Latmi cho twmei zauc kho.

Verb	***Adverb***	***Adverb of Adverb***
Tat	ri	taphtap be.
Taanc	chuy	khithkhit re.
Suan	kasic	tanhtan e.

Karuc khou **Latmi** *taphtap, khithkhit, tanhtan* hei ***Adverb of Adverb*** **Latmi** e twmei thay e.

(2) ***Adverb of Adjective*** **Latmi**

Mphwan phumhphummei phey tei mbaanv bam e.
Nchu rihrimei dui tei zangv e.
Ndeih dihdimei khuaicdui mbap be.
Nggit dithditmei mwnrym namh e.
Howgay khithkhitmei tunacpui tei guang e.
Haengc ringhringmei mwn tei kahaw e.

Karuc khou tiiloumei latrian khou naimei Latmi hei tabui Latmi cho twmei zauc kho.

Adjective	*Adverb of Adjective*	*Noun*	*Verb*
Mphwan	phumhphummei	phey tei	mbaanv bam e.
Nchu	rihrimei	dui tei	zangv e.
Ndeih	dihdimei	khuaicdui	mbap be.
Nggit	dithditmei	mwnrym	namh e.
Howgay	khithkhitmei	Tunacpui tei	guang e.
Haengc	ringhringmei	mwn tei	kahaw e.

Karuc khou tiiloumei latrian khou naimei Latmi hei ***Adverb of Adjective Latmi*** e twmei how e.

KATHAIDWAN

1. Ruanglat khou latmi tabui ta cho ? Duina daw o khatnic latkamv kanei kathumh hy o.
2. Ruanglat khou latmi kazaat kanei nai e. Tbuibui tei cho.
3. Nang raana latmi louna hysuak go.

   (a) Tinggaanc _____ the.

   (b) Tingmow _____e.

   (c) Neih suc tina nap minc _____the.

   (d) Chingh zuang _____ e.

   (e) Mai mit _____e.
4. Nchumhmei dinc o.

   Kamei tat ranv khithkhit re. *adverb of adverb e/adverb of adjective e.* Mwnpwang tei nrym raihrai e. *adverb of adverb e/adverv of adjective e.*

   Huay kauc chinhchin e.*adverb of adjective e/adverb of adverb e.* Lubuannei howgay taphtap e. *adverb of adjective e/adverb of adverb e.*

10.0 LATPAA
(Pair of Word)

Ruanglat Grammar khou **Latmi** hei tabui cho twmei hei Kabah lev kariang naina ncham kan the. Kumna mi khouhei kabah lev kariang naina **Latpaa** hei nic kathai kho.

Latpaa tabui cho?

Ruanglat khou latkaeng hei kapaa kapaa naina saamei latkaeng geicna nai e. Mi latkaeng paa tihei **Latpaa** kaw e. Latpaa rui latkaeng kabah tipatlou e. Latpaa sinsw thayna saa ethei lat hei kabah gaymei, kagunc naimei, nuhgaymei latsav sw e.

Latpaa hei kakang kathumh patna zauc nuh e -

(1) Kazi Latpaa (Pair of Word),
(2) Nchoumei Latpaa (Pair of Opposit Word) khatnic
(3) Kaluaihmei Latpaa (Reduplications).

(1) KAZI LATPAA (Pair of Word)

Latpaa hei kapaa kaneimei kabah pat ngammei nai e, kapaa khat kabah pat ngammakmei nic nai e. Kazi Latpaa hei kazaat padeih nai e - **(a) Noun Latpaa, (b) Verb Latpaa, (c) Adverb Latpaa khatnic (d) Adjective Latpaa** - mi guay hei e. Kabangc khou mi latpaa lwn asaekc nchinlou e.

(a) Noun zamh Kazi Latpaa

ntey tamuc

Lungcsii sihnic ***ntey tamuc*** thu gaat nuh mak ge.

ntey - ***Ntey*** lou makmei gan ta chaamphut twna kaw e.
Latkamv - Gan khou ntey chaa khang lou o.

tamuc - ***Tamuc*** hei kabah naimei latkaeng e.
Latkam - Tamuc hei khiangc gaanc e.

nkhui tamaa

Nkhui tamaa na sihnic maekna tam kani nuh mak ge.

nkhui - ***Nkhui*** hei kabah naimei latkaeng e.
Latkav - gankhiang nkhui, tasiaw nkhui mi kumhmei ta e.

tamaa - ***Tamaa*** hei latpaa e, kabah naithuai mak ge.

Latkamv:- pary parav, nruay tiangtu, kaikwn kairun, naasamc naaraa, mikumhmei guay hei **Noun** zamh **Kazi Latpaa** raana e.

(b) Verb zamh Kazi Latpaa

Kathouh karangh

Latsaa khou lunghpuamh khang ***kathouh karangh*** riu.

kathouh - ***Kathouh*** hei kabah naimei latkaeng e.
Latkamv - Mpuakckai thingpei rui *kathouh* e.

karangh - ***Karangh*** hei nic kabah naimei latkaeng e.
Latkamv - Nukuanc karangh e.

nkhav nggav

- Khat khat ta *nkhav nggav* e.

nkhav - *Nkhav* hei kabah naimei latkaeng e.

nggav - ***nggav*** hei latpaa e, kabah naithuai mak ge.

nsauc nrauc

nsauc - *nsauc* hei kabah naithuai mak ge, latpaa e.

nrauc - *Nrauc* hei kwn makna, pian makna saamei, meic baihmei khou ractatmei ta e.

Latkamv:-

nkhuay ngguay, duilow thaamhthah, ntaanv nggaanv, laatu laazangv - mi kumhmei guay hei **verb** zamh **Kazi Latpaa** raana e.

(c) Adverb zamh Kazi Latpaa

katuanh kating

- Lanvzaipou ***katuanh katingna*** tat re.

katuanh - 'Katuanh' hei kabah naimei latkaeng e, katumcmei ta e.

- Katuanh langvna lat saa ntangh mak khe.

kating - Kating hei karaana zamh kabah maek ge, latpaa e.

katham kathuina

- Kamik how la makna ***katham kathuina*** tat re.

katham - 'Katham' hei kabah naimei latkaeng e.
Latkamv - Kabaanc rui laeng ta katham e.

kathui - 'Kathui' hei kabah maek ge, latpaa e.

Latkamv:-

kakam kamaana, padup padicna, tarut taraana, mikumhmei guay hei Adverb zamh kazi Lapaa e.

(d) Adjective zamh Kazi Latpaa

nzouh nsouh

- Mazahgac ***nzouh nsouh*** e twmei meicguayna thay e.

nzouh - **Nzouh** hei kabah naimei latkaeng.
Latkamv - Kamei mbaamei na hamh e, nzouh e.

nsouh - **Nsouh** hei karaana zamh kabah naithuai mak ge, latpaa e.

palik palei

- Kataangam ***Palik palei*** e.

palik - **Palik** hei kabah naimei latkaeng e.
Latkamv - Nah le, palik langv the, kap zaic pwni the.

palei - **Palei** hei karaana kabah naithuai mak ge, latpaa e.

Latkamv :- saasi saarouhmei, katuan katuimei, kahap kahaamei, param paraamei, panvti nggit - mi kumhmei guay hei Adjective Latpaa e.

Karuc khouhei aniw how e, mikiu thu Ruanglat khou Lat-haap Latpaa nai e khatnic mihei Noun, Verb, Adjective khatnic Adverb zamh Lat-haap Latpaa nai e twmei hei e.

(2) NCHOUMEI LATPAA (Pairs of Opposite Word)

Ruanglat khou nchoumei latkaeng kanei kanei kariuna nchoumei latkaeng kasiamh e. Mi latkaeng zaat tatei **Nchoumei Latpaa** twna thay e. Mi kumhmei nchoumei latpaa asaekc kabangc khou hylou e.

Dui-mai

Dui zamh nchoumei latkaeng hei *mai* e, **dui-mai** twna kariuna saa e.

Kai-lau

Kai zamh nchoumei latkaeng hei *lau* e, **kai-lau** twna kariuna saa e.

Pui-pu

Pui zamh nchoumei latkaeng hei *pu* e, **pui-pu** twna kariuna saa e.i

Mi kumhmei kariumei latkaeng zaat tihei **Nchoumei Latpaa** twna thay e.

Nchoumei Latpaa hei kabangc khou hyloumei kumcna kazaat padeih patna zauc nuh e. Mikiu thu - **(a) Noun zamh Nchoumei Latpaa, (b) Verb zamh Nchoumei Latpaa, (c) Adverb zamh Nchoumei Latpaa khatnic (d) Adjective zamh Nchoumei Latpaa** - mi guay hei e.

(a) Noun zamh Nchoumei Latpaa

ntey-taisuh Gan khou tei ***ntey-taisuh*** lou chuy o.

Ntey hei noun e, *taisuh* nic noun e. Ntey lev taisuh hei nchoumei latkaeng kanei e. Mi latkaeng kanei hei kariuna Noun zamh Nchoumei Latppa sw e.

si-guak Kaguinai kai ***si-guak*** nruaih chuy e.

Si hei noun e, *guak* nic noun e. Si lev guak hei nchoumei latkaeng kanei e. Mi latkaeng kanei hei kariuna Noun zamh Nchoumei Latpaa sw e.

thing-tauh Kai sw khang ***thing-tauh*** laalou ngam the.

Thing hei noun e, *tauh* nic noun e. Thing lev tauh hei nchoumei latkaeng kanei e. Mi latkaeng kanei hei kariuna Noun zamh Nchoumei Latpaa sw e.

(b) Verb zamh Nchoumei Latpaa

lusuan-latsaa Chadi riu, nang pu *lusuan latsaa* bam e.

Lusuan hei verb e, *latsaa* nic verb e. Lusuan lev latsaa hei nchoumei latkaeng kanei e. Mi latkaengh kanei hei kariuna Verb zamh Nchoumei Latpaa sw e.

tu-zangv Laukhwan khuangh chakiu khou aniw tu-zangv e.

Tu hei verb e, *zangv* nic verb e. Tu lev zangv hei nchoumei latkaeng kanei e. Mi latkaengh kanei hei kariuna Verb zamh Nchoumei Latpaa sw e.

taanc-ruaic Aniw baihmei nic taanc, lau nic taanc-ruaic e. *Taanc* hei verb e, *ruaic* nic verb e.Taanc lev ruaic hei nchoumei latkaeng kanei e. Mi latkaengh kanei hei kariuna Verb zamh Nchoumei Latpaa sw e.

(3) Adverb zamh Nchoumei Latpaa

tatpat-tatgutna Apou tei karacpouc the tihkic ***tatpat-tatgutna*** kalung bam e.

Tatpat hei Adverb e, *tatgut* nic Adverb e. Tatpat lev tatgut hei nchoumei latkaeng kanei e. Mi latkaengh kanei hei kariuna Adverb zamh Nchoumei Latpaa sw e.

zauckey-zauckuna

Kamanv nchamc mak ge, puatc tatei ***zauckey-zauckuna*** zauc bam e.

Zauckey hei Adverb e, *zaucku* nic Adverb e. Zauckey lev zaucku hei nchoumei latkaeng kanei e. Mi latkaengh kanei hei kariuna Adverb zamh Nchoumei Latpaa sw e.

tattanc-tatnau Mi khangsuangc hian dat ngam mak khe, ***tattanc-tatnau*** tat bammei hei di the.

Tattanc hei Adverb e, *tatnau* nic Adverb e. Tattanc lev tatnau hei nchoumei latkaeng kanei e. Mi latkaengh kanei hei kariuna Adverb zamh Nchoumei Latpaa sw e.

(4) Adjective zamh Nchoumei Latpaa

siimei-gaymei Gaygacpou zamh ***siimei-gaymei*** meic guayna thay e.

Siimei hei Adjective e, *gaymei* nic Adjective e.Simei lev gaymei hei nchoumei latkaeng kanei e. Mi latkaengh kanei hei kariuna Adjective zamh Nchoumei Latpaa sw e.

khianghmei-ndeihmei

Nlaunadui thu ***khianghmei-ndeihmei*** kazauh ngam the. *Khianghmei* hei Adjective e, *ndeihmei* nic Adjective e. Khianghmei lev ndeihmei hei nchoumei latkaeng kanei e. Mi latkaengh kanei hei kariuna Adjective zamh Nchoumei Latpaa sw e.

nchumei-chaenghmei

Aseic tingmik hei ***nchumei-chaenghmei*** kagat chaa raphrap e.

Nchumei hei Adjective e, *chaenghmei* nic Adjective e. Nchumei lev chaenghmei hei nchoumei latkaeng kanei e. Mi latkaengh kanei hei kariuna Adjective zamh Nchoumei Latpaa sw e.

Karuc khou kathaimei khouhei how e, mikiu thu Ruanglat khou Nchoumei Latpaa nai e khatnic mihei Noun, Verb, Adjective khatnic Adverb zamh Nchoumei Latpaa nai e twmei hei e.

(3) KALUAIHMEI LATPAA (Reduplicattions)

Ruanglat khou saa kaluaih datdatmei latkaeng, latpaa zaat nai e. Mi tatei **Kaluaihmei Latpaa** (Reduplication) twna thay e.

linghlingh laenghlaengh - Kai guangtanghpui lev ***linghlingh laenghlaengh*** tat dat kan de.

kasatsat kamatmat - Kapumc nsuan de tihkic ***kasatsat kamatmat*** tat kan de.

katuitui kaliangliang - Akai si Kamangpu tei swsi langvna ***katuitui kaliangliang***, saa dat ngam mak khe.

kapkap nuicnuic - Kapu theic kanmei tangv khou award tei tiiguang tina kakai guay ***kapkap nuicnuic*** bam e.

siisii gaygay - Aseicdou guangmei Father Matthew hei ***siisii gaygay*** e.

towtow zizi - Kamei thu bauruam langvna ***towtow zizi*** de.

lulu latlat - Taraengv kadaicmei kai ***lulu latlat*** bam the.

Latkamv:-

thuncthun duaicduai
khiangckhiangc ndeihdeih
thacthac bumcbumc
kangakngak kangohngoh
patpat gutgut
keykey kuku
latlat lulu
buybuy baengbaeng
napnap zouhzouh
tutu zangvzangv
phayphay baanhbaanh
padupdup padicdic
syansyan khuanghkhuangh

Mihei kumcna Kaluaihmei Latpaa hei geicna sinsw e, saa e.

KATHAIDWAN

1. Latpaa tabui ta cho? Ruanglat khou Latpaa kazaat azuh nai cho ? Tabuibui tei cho?
2. Kazi Latpaa tabui ta cho? Kazaat azuh nai cho? Tabuibui tei cho?
3. Nchoumei Latpaa kazaat azuh nai cho? Tabuibui tei cho? Latkamv khat khat tiina hy o.
4. Ruanglat khou Kaluaihmei Latpaa nai e. Latkamv kathumh hy o.

11.0 NYNGTYNG LATCHAP

(Provebs and Sayings)

11.1.0 LATCHAP

(1) Alauc phac raengdaic manc e.

Alauc nic gaymei taanv taanc ngam e, lwm mak tuang sw riu.

(2) Alauc amuh sw ethei tarou geic e.

Ramh thaysuak thaydik makmei alauc rui kapy sw ethei latlu geic e, siimei pat geic e.

(3) Aliauhmei nei khou baeng karu e.

Kaliausipui mei taanv taanc lak nipui nungc taanh khang raengc e.

(4) Bangh baih nimei lungthu agaekc nchow e.

Meic sw laknipui mei tei kanyng karav maek tyam tyam e.

(5) Baeng ntuk sihnic karaana kadaan ruaic nuhmak ge.

Maansei hei nyngtyng sihnic, meic gay sihnic karaana ta thuancku mak ge.

(6) Baanh khatna rui kakhwan pat mak ge.

Gaanv nei nchamc tina agai bam tuang de, gaanv khatna agai nuhmak ge.

(7) Biwmei na ny tiki satmei na suc ranv e.

Kamei thu sw chuylou pwng e, saa chuylou pwng e twna lwmgay bam tiki sw kasic chuylou e, saa kasic chuylou e.

(8) Chiakc nic kaek mak, khav nic duak mak.

Ningmei nic laatow, kasi karou nic pat mak.

(9) Chakhouhnapeic na sihnic kachiklou ethei phaysuy baanhsuangh e.

Nthyammei lung nic daihmei lung nic sw kabiu riu, nuanclou ethei gay mak ge.

(10) Ding khang nai ethei dungh khang nai e.

Sw o, kazauh o, kadow chaamei nai pwni de.

(11) Duakpui khav daic chuy e.

Laaniina laatow makmei puat tei gay chuy kumcna ning e, mi ta tei saa kasuan kamuan e.

(12) Duipangc siimei meic ta nrav e.

Meic siimei sii khang raana sw e.

(13) Dui chu nic mai mit, dui lum nic mai mit.

Mphutna nic hyam nuh e, nthiamna nic hyam nuh e.

(14) Duinac thuak khou khavguakc kapy sw e.

Mpangmei nunc pangc khou ramhthay maihmei rui kapy sw e.

(15) Gai kasuan nii khourui gandui guang e.

Taanv hei katamv langv ethei katamv kasic e, lat hei gay khang the twna saa geic langv ethei siimei saapatlou e.

(16) Ganmakhyan kagat khaic ri ethei kaduk keythuy mak ge.

Lat kagat saa ri ethei loukey dat sii e.

(17) Gaandaih lat mu bak lai bak dian e.

Gaandaih lat rui lungning tigaylou e, saa tamian luh tamianlou e.

(18) Guaiphuap rangv mai nchou riu.

Nchu ri bammei ta lunghpuamh khang kathouh karangh riu.

(19) Guak lau ruaiclou tiki si kapav touc nam riu.

Meic khat taanv ta taanc nimpui khe sw riu.

(20) Guaih kamai saenghmei nic sim hac, ziuh kamai duimei nic sim hac e.

Meic khang meic khang chaa chaa khang swna lungh tuang de.

(21) Guaih tanhmei lau pat tiki guaih naumei ta buay e.

Tanhmei bauhmei ta saa ngam makna nsuan suanmei ta saa e.

(22) Kabwn rui kakav ta karak ge.

Nyngtyng naimei alauc rui gaanthauh ta saahyam e.

(23) Kamang rahpat guaimei ta meic ping e.

Kapy kagav rui saapat guaimei ta puiruhnac chakhuang sw e, piu e.

(24) Kabam maekna kagaeng nkauh riu.

Meic cham meic cham sw o. Nang cham hamhna sw riu.

(25) Kaphay timhmei kamwang timc e.
Ryanraamei ta nrouh makna taanhpui mei rui kathai tutow e.

(26) Kalwn simei meic ta khan e.
Karaana kalwn thay makpui mei meic baihmei ta ningkeyna saa e.

(27) Lungc kasic khang kaganv ri mak ge.
Gaandaih di the lungc kasic dat pw lak khe, mbaa khang kaganv ri the, mbaa pwlak ge twna ning khang maek ge.

(28) Lungc kasicmei gin khang zouh luan nii e.
Katwn pat makpui mei karaana lwn thay mak ge, kazi ny kazi hamh ny meic hu meic haa pat nii chuy e.

(29) Mbap khourui tari kim khang sw riu.
(i) Kadow chaamei laatow the twna kagat rina sw riu.
(ii) Kiauhpui chaeng pyan khang sw riu.

(30) Mukatna kathw geic e.
(i) Kapumc nthyam e, tihkic nyngtyng nai e.
(ii) Kapumc thu nthyam ki kalat kalu geic e.

(31) Meickai napzungc howna baapdan raa e.
Taanc-ruaihmei ganv khou taanclou mak lana, meickai lwn ta howna tangnuangh thau dat re.

(32) Meic nac theic diuc tw ethei kanac theic e.
Meickai ta sii kan diuc twna sw ethei kakhou sii guang e.

(33) Miktiatmei rui chaengzay ethei khunh khou zaylou e.
Ramhthay makmei rui kapy sw ethei ramvsic pat re.

(34) Nau khang khaenghmei bow e.
Karaana ning nkauhna talyan ethei meic hu khou zak ge.

(35) Nkamhpui lat meic thay ranv e.
Simei-zakmei lat kauc bam mak sihnic meic thay ngam e.

(36) Nkay nimei si sangv mak ge.
Taanc changh sw changh nipui mei thu reihreina taanc e.

(37) Nrui how ethei how liang kanei e.
Siimei patlou guay ethei pat liang kanei thay e.

(38) Nrui nic theic, builwang nic bau mak.
(i) Taanv nic taancpat, syandui nic gut mak.
(ii) Siimei ta nic ngamlou, kabiu kachei tuang nic maek.

(39) Padik makmei duikhw kasuakc ge.

Thay raumei latsaa geic e, saatwan saalyam e.

(40) Phah mu katamv ethei manc e, tihkic lat mu katamv ethei phan e.
Taanvruai mu katamv tithei gay e, lat thu saa katamv dat dat rethei siimei saapatlou e.

(41) Ruay kui khatna duy mwmei, haenghmei kak pat re.

Pui khat pu khatna nac bam sihnic, ntakmei, mpangmei, kachwn kachwn, kangui kangui baic e.

(42) Si nriakcmei nkay suc e.

Lat saa raupui mei taanv changc taanc e.

(43) Tarikai nkat zih khourui bunghkai nkat re.
Kakiakna bam khou ntaamvlou khourui kagat ri pwkhou ryanraana mian e.

(44) Tauhmuanh ta rav e twna suanglou tithei meic ta nrav e.

Mpangmei ta kapy tiswlou tithei kata suamcloumei ta tei amuclouna sii khang raana sw e.

(45) Tu geic ni khourui tu rau e.

Agaamv agav langv ethei laatow rau e.

(46) Tunac mic reymei kadwan gay e.

Taanc reymei, kahouh reymei rui gay hu tanhtan e.

(47) Tunac gaymei ta khanlou khang nai e.
Gaymei twmei hei nthuih thikhthik mak ge,
katwn khat khou hamh ethei katwn khat khou thu gaat muay e.

(48) Thing nkhuaimei meic ta gou e.

Kakhuay naipui mei meic ta agai khaengc e.

(49) Thingbang nkauhmei mpwan tow e.

Maansei hei nyngtyng ntakna kapy kagav sw ethei latlu tow e.

(50) Zoucki kuak ahuih lyn e.
Kalung siipui mei rui ryanraa nimei twn tei mpangmei rui lyn e.

12.0 LATTHIAP
(Idioms)

(1) amik nrouc gut re. - how numei how e.

(2) baaley karou maek ge. - lat kadyng maekmei, saapat saagutmei.

(3) chagou mikbut - kaling tei tithay mak khang swmei, kaling tei nkamhloumei.

(4) chaengkhamv tanyang - ramh sw ngammak tuang kha taanc-ruaic nimei ta khamvmei tiimei

(5) chaengpit phuaic - meic rui saa saamei khou nzeicmei.

(6) dui khou baeng dowmei - saa bam taanc bam sihnic kalwn howpat makmei, kazam kazei how pat makmei

(7) dui na tian, muangh na tian - kariu karaa, kazauh sau.

(8) duikaanv tuangc rimei - lat kagat saa rimei, taanv kagat taanc rimei.

(9) guaih phaan guak theic e, guak phaan si theic e. - guaih phaan guak tii nuh e, saa chuy luh chuypui nyng e.

(10) guaipuang zatnu - ganc kha zanh, tu kha zatnu; ganh khang nic nzav, tu khang nic tu nuh mak.

(10) hu nic baeng, nthei nic sauh. - zauczihmei raana swpatloumei. nthei hu zauczihmei raana e.

(11) kahyang duimei bw ta haamvmei - kacham kazi phu makna nkauh rwan ta madanhmei.

(12) kasun kapav biw nrunmei	-	chaanahmei, nyngtyngmei lev nyng-tyngmei, mpangmei lev mpangmei nowpuc swmei, kariumei
(13) kasu nic kasu, kathang nic kathang	-	nchamc chamcmei kanei. (thang nic ntum, suc nic nsuan twna manc luailoumei.)
(14) khangchumei tamai	-	lwmgay hak bam pwkhou kadow chaa mak raph twmei.
(15) lym nei baeng	-	khat biak tat rethei khat ta kathouh karangh, khat biak tat dat nic kathouh karangh twmei kalung nthan makpui mei.
(16) laengtau baczimei	-	kanaamv sw bammei puat maek kan pwkhou, nap-gan tutow dat mak pwkhou, rupryan ntam kan pwkhou bam siimei, mbai saihsaimei.
(17) laengsang bam khiakmei	-	now kaw nkhiakmei. Ai katanpui ta kaw, kamei atanpui ta kaw twmei.
(18) luihtaamv bac duakmei	-	ganphu luihlaamei chaeng ntu-nggaanv lungc nkhuai mbaamei
(19) maichuangc duiluangh saanv	-	tingsaeng zaeng
(20) maypui sipdaan ramkhuan	-	kapouc karaamc thay makna nkham pat nkham gut, nkham gui-guimei.
(21) mwang duitumei	-	latlu saathay suanthaymei, kathiak patna saathaymei.
(22) miknac zowna	-	nggiathna, matingna, rigunna.
(23) muangh kak neic	-	latsaabak siimei, kathu siimei, tiakmei

(24) meic samdanh kahawmei - kagaanv nai tanhtanna meic baihmei ta nguihmei.

(25) mbaw nsiangthai nkhwan kumc - gaeng makmei twn tei lwmgayna . kaganv sw maan bammei

(26) mphou baaley - kiu hamhmei twn saa huih riuhriumei, nthiam mbeh khang saamei

(27) neih nic keylou bw nic pat mak - ramh khat luailou kan, ramh khat n i c sw dat mak twmei kadow siimei kadak ganv

(28) nukuanc zei phui makmei - alauc di he, kazi mak ge. Alauc di he twna meic phaan chak makmei.

(29) ntiang nkhuaih zaeng laamei - nthyammei daihmei meicguayna chwn laamei.

(30) ntiang maw hou - how mak kham how e twmei.

(31) nzeihpui boudaan - kaling ta thaypat mak khang ramh khat lyanmei, sw nchinmei.

(32) pwan sangv si - kalwan kalam thay makna kaluan kalou tanhmei.

(33) pheibuay dingzaa khou - kalwn howpat lak nimei khang taanclou saaloumei.

(34) paanvtamv dui ntak - thay pwng e, howpat pwng e chariakh go twna saamei kabac.

(35) pwanmangh mik ta kachaekc ge twmei

- kiuc hamhmei khou lunghgutna bwan bammei.

(36) phay tii baanh tiimei - kadow chaa kandiu khang nkamhna kadum kadan nduanghloumei.

(37) rav ta sihnic dui gancchaekna lungc e

- maansei nchamc kak khou saanuh suannuh mak tuang maek ge.

(38) ramvpangc sii khou ramvrav ariumei

- kalangv kalw thaymakpui rambai baina swkasicmei.

(39) ruiry kumc katwan thu daihmei

- thaurey khou lungcsi ryanraa nganv khou taanc tanc ruaic tancna lungcgay amanv datmei.

(40) sam tu rei katmei - ntu-nggaanv lunghmei

(41) si ahu zouc nthei - kadat kadaeng the, hu nimei nthei nthei nimei hu the.

(44) si lev ziuh - khat lev khat howthoumei - nuhnah makmei.

(45) tam khat lu khat re - kaibang kai hei gaat tuang maek ge, lu suanpui sik zouh, tam laanvpat re.

(46) taruaihmei khang nrah gaamei - gaeng lakmei twn taanswmei

(47) tingkauh gaanchuangna - meic laatow thuy makmei

(48) tauthingc dui phui mak khou - katumcna, ntaw ntaw hei.

(49) zeihthangc khav - meic laatow thuy makmei tunac.

(50) zouckuangh sau suimei - thayrey bampui mei ta nchammei.

.....

13.0 CHARUANGC LATRIAK
(Social Grammar)

13.1.0 Phwm (Head Clans)
13.2.0 Khwang (Clans)
13.3.0 Gai (Totems)
13.4.0 Khugyang (Marriageable Lines & Terms)
13.5.0 Chakhuang Lwan (Social Respect)
13.6.0 Numei (Taboo)
13.7.0 Neimei (Genna)
13.8.0 Riangruaih (Kinship Terms)
13.9.0 Kawmei Lwan (Addressing Terms)
13.10.0 Chakhuang Lat
13.11.0 Chapriak Lat (Cultural Terms)

Charuangc latriak kathaimei lwan ta Social Grammar twna thay e. Mi kathaidwan khouhei charuangc khatnic chingkhiuhchap zamh latkaeng, latriak, kawmei lwan asaekc kathai khang duina hylou e.

13.1.0 PHWM (Head Clans)

Ruangmei zaat khou phwmdaih kanei nai e. Mikiu thu **Singguanghmei Kai** khatnic **Phwmguanghmei Kai** - mi kanei hei e. Mi phwm kanei khou hei kaikhwang guay kazauh ngam the. Mi phwm kanei theilayna chanaa punav, pou-tou pou-maek, chaphwm chaki, khu-gyang, nowkawmei, mihmei lwan hei tat re.

13.2.0 KHWANG (Clans)

Khwang tihei Kai twna nic duina saa e. Kaikhwang twna saengcna nic saa e. Kaikhwang hei kabangc khouhei kumcna zauc nuh e.

Singguanghmei Kai :

Kaamhmei, Malanghmei, Paamei (Mpamei), Phaucmei - mi guay hei e.

Phwmguanghmei Kai:

Daenghmei, Gaengmei, Gwanmei(Guaymei), Malingmei (Meiringmei), Mariamhmei (Riamhmei), Ngaucmei, Paanvmei, Rwangmei, Thaanhmei (Thaicmei) - mi guay hei e.

13.3.0 GAI (Totems)

Ruangmei zaat hei khwang khat gai khat khat nai e. Mihei khouringh, nruay, gou-gaa khatnic thingbang mi kumhmei guay rui sw e. Gai naithaumei pary khat khat nai e. Gai hei tu nu zangv nu e. Gai guay kabangc khou hylou e.

Daenghmei kai gai	=	Ndau /Guakkuak
Gaengmei kai gai	=	Kamang
Gwanmei kai gai	=	Ndau
Kaamhmei kai gai	=	Ruayhuihna
Malanghmei kai gai	=	Ruayhuihna/Raengdaic
Malingmei kai gai	=	Thaengbang
Ngaucmei kai gai	=	
Paamei kai gai	=	Ruayhuihna
Paanvmei kai gai	=	Ruayngauh
Phauhmei kai gai	=	Ruayhuihna
Riamhmei kai gai	=	Gou
Rwangmei kai gai	=	Raengvbungh (Thaanngangc)
Thaancmei/Thaicmei kai gai	=	Thaengbang/Nthaanh

13.4.0 KHUGYANG (Marriageable and Unmarriageable Terms)

Kaikhwang kanei thunh-mauh laa karina, kawlaa karina, nkhu nggyangna bammei kaikhwang kanei tatei **khugyang** kaw e. Nowkaw mauh laamei, tianmihmei khou kadai swmei hei chaphwm chaki kai twmei hei e. Chaphwm chaki twmei hei karuc khou kathai rey kanmei Singguanghmei kai khatnic Phwmguanghmei kai - mi kanei tihei e. Ntumei nggaanvmei Singguanghmei nsyn ethei mi tatei tanpui tanpu twna thay e. Tanpui-tanpu thu kawlaa nuh mak ge. Mitei kumcna Phwmguanghmei kai tunac nggaanv hei tanpui tanpu e, reynungc riak theilayna tho kawlaa nuh mak ge. Mihei ntaw nganvmei khou Singguanghmei kai tho Singguanghmei kai nchamc kaw-laa nuh mak ge twmei hei tatkey muay bam e. Tihkic, Phwmguanghmei kai khou thu gai baic ethei kawlaa nuh de, khugyang sw nuh de twmei thiak khou tatkey bam e.

Tanpui-Tanpu

Kaikhunh khatnamei ntumei nggaanvmei kaw-laamei ta tanpui tanpu kaw-laamei twna thay e. Mi hei charuangc rui nuh mak ge. Latkamv khang - Gaengmei kai tunac khatnic nggaanv khat khat ta kawlaa ethei mi tei **tanpui tanpu kawlaamei** - duina **tanpui-tanpu** twna thay e. Tanpui tanpu kawlaamei hei nu e.

Tanpui-Puningc :

Chanaa punav nac mpouh-luh nunc tatei **tanpui-puningc** kaw e. 'Tanpui-Puningc' twmei hei nzian dianghmei latkaeng e.

Tankhiak

Chaphwm chaki bam khwan sihnic puanc nchamcmei, hamhethei diangc langvmei, tan-luh kaw nkhiakmei gay mak ge, nu e. Atanpui ta nang rui kaw, nang tanpui ta ai rui kaw ethei mi kumhmei ta **tankhiak** kaw e, **laengsang bam nkhiakmei** twna nic thay e.

Tankhi

Kaikhwang baih thu mictat kanmei luh rui kamauc khang kapuningc nac luh nunc ta laa nuh e. Tihkic, mpouh nunc(puningc nunc) rui luh nac ta kamauc khang laa nuh mak ge. Mi kumhmei tatei **tankhi** kaw e. Tankhi hei tankhiak khangsuangc sihnic sii e, nu e.

13.5.0 CHAKHUANG LWAN

Ruangmei zaat khou chakhuang twmei hei nkauhmei nthukmei lwan e. Chakhuang hei phwm kanei kak khou, khu-gyang kak khou, charuangc khou, pei khou, khangchu luchu khou, tumei zangvmei khou, taanhmei ruaihmei khou, latsav luswan, ramhlam ramhbamv kataana khou nthukna tat re. Chakhuang lwan thaymakpui mei ta nzi nlaumei, ramhthaymakmei, ncham ncheilou makmei nac twna meic rui zauc e. Gaanthauh alauc thaymei, pouh chaih, pui neih kasuih thayna kawmei hei rey liangmei chakhuang lwan the.

13.6.0 NUMEI-NEIMEI (Taboo)

Numei twmei latkaeng khou hei 'nuhmak ge' twmei na hamh e, tihkic charuangc, ravchap rui 'thingcloumei' kabac - social sanction tei nai e. Ruangmei chapriak khou **nu** e twmei guay tei **nei** the. Nei the twmei thu sw nuhmak khe, nthaekc the. Kumna Ruangmei chapriak khou numei hei kasing geicna nai e. Kabah gaymei nic mpeyna nai e. Kabangc khouhei latkamv khang asaekc hylou e.

Charuangc khatnic chapriak khou numei

Latkamv -

(1) Meicdow nu e
(2) Kaihouc lauhut nu e.
(3) Lat saraamc saa nu e.
(4) Nsiang ndan nu e.
(5) Meic khaamv ta kahi nu e.
(6) Meic riang kathangv nu e.
(7) Kaamc laanc nu e.
(8) Laurei thing sw kadai nu e.
(9) Suc luc zouc luc bam sihnic now ta swzak swchangamc nu e.
(10) Suc laa zouc laana mi tei phungc lana laupuk lauzaengc tatruan nu e.

Mi kumhmei charuangc khatnic ravchap ravriak khou numei peyna nai e. Mi guay hei twan lyam ethei chuk keylou e, mat nai e. Chuk tei kuak mak gethei situang rouctuang pat re - suhmei nuhmei, nggangh nteihmei, hownu hownei lungcpat re twna lwm e.

Saa numei

Lat hei saa numei latkaeng saapat ni khou, 'ravpui nu ndyna' hamhethei 'meic saa nupui lat re tihkic' twna kahou e.

Suc nthuk nau nthukmei bamv khou tatlouna 'theihmei' twmei latkaeng hei saa nu e. Kage naina saapui tac ethei 'ravpui nu ndyna' hamhethei 'meic saa nupui lat re tihkic' twna saa rey pwni. Mi tangv tei 'Sansiina theihmei-ringhmei pat pwsihnic kailuangc khou mbeihlou o' twna saa nuh e.

Meic khat zamh ravpuat siimei, kheyliak, lwnchav ta saatowna, saa ngachapna khan nu e. Kumna mi kumhmei lat hei saamei ganv khou 'kakhang de tihkic,' 'aney raana saa tuang de tihkic' twmei hei saa rey pwni.

Kumna saa numei lat peyna nai e. Mi kumhmei ganv khoutei saaa makna tho nuh mak twtuang nai ethei akumhna saa ni cho twmei tei kathiak nai geic e. Mitei thay lana lat saa khang kage nai e.

How numei

Meic swluai dowluai bammei ta how nu e. Nrui mpu bammei ta how nu e. Nrui, nthanh daihmei ta how nu e. Lungcmaanv lungcmow bammei, swluai swtiat bammei ta how nu e. Mi kumhmei ta howmei ganv khou 'hownu hownei' hamhethei 'amik nrouc gut re' twna saa e.

Kai numei

Kai numei twmei thu gin bangv nuh makmei ganv twtuang e. Ngaasatna puanhmei, kaikhunhmei theihmei nit, kiruai kanac puanhmei tingmik, rahrih siimei patpui ganv - mi kumhmei guay khou reynungc kai nu bam khwan e. Mi kumhmei ganv khou kai numei hei kabah nai tina sw bam tuang e.

13.7.0 NEIMEI (Genna)

Nei hei kailuangc tuang, charuangc tuang sw e, cháray nei mak ge. Tingkwm nei guay nai e - ting riu reymei khou **ting nei**, nrihthai key reymei khou **nrihthai nei**, napphwn key luai pwkhou **dihkap nei** - mikumhmei nei guay hei nai e. Kailuangc khou charyn tasiat pat tuang nai ethei nei e. Kai maikaumei, nwm khouringc kazi chaa makna kailuangc guangmei, theicsi theihmei, baenglaa zaymei - mi kumhmei patmei ganv khou nei e. Khwmsaengh ngaydaih ngay luaimei ganv khou nei e. Neimei hei neymei - Ravguangc khou suaihiamlou khang, chuk, nuan guay kuaklou khang, situang rouctuang pat mak khang raenghbangc keymakna kailuangc khou kangrim khimc bamna neymei twtuang e twna dinclou e.

13.8.0 RIANGRUAIH (Kinship Terms)

Pui khat pu khatna, kaikhunh khatna khourui chaapat kingcpat lana, lungcking lungckuc tat kanmei zei khatnamei nunc tatei riangruaih kaw e. Riangruaih khatnamei nunc tampy laa kari e. Guaih lungthu tu kariu e. Riangruaih hei duhmei khatnic naamei riangruaih twna saa nuh e. Riangruaih kasuih chuyna lunghmei hei nyngtyngmei lwan e twna laa e.

Kiktaat

Mpouh riang khou keymei riangruaih lwan ta kiktaat kaw e. Kiktaat hei - Pouhpei - puipu - nah mpouh - tou - tak - pai - ru - kik - tat twna key e. Miti hei **kiktaat** twna kaw e.

zei-zik

Zei-zik tabui ta cho? Kaikhwang khourui mpaeng patkanmei luh nunc khourui chaapat kingcpat kanmei nunc ta zei-zik kaw e. Zei-zik hei mihei kumcna zauc nuh e. Luh - tou - tou (tou nac) - tak - pai - ru - zei - zik. Mi riang tihei **zei-zik** kaw e.

Chanaa-poutou-puineih lwan

chaphwm-chaki			- kaikhwang baih baihmei nowkaw mauhlaa nuhmei kaikhwang.
khu-gyang			- nkhu-nggyangmei kaikhwang/zaat nunc.
pou-maek	=		- now puningc lev gaanv. - chaphwm chaki nggaanvmei nunc; - khugiangkai mei nggaanvmei nunc.
maek	=	maek amaek	- tanpui gaanv; luh gaanv - atanpui gaanv.
duh	=	duh aduh	- swanrey ta kawmei nchamc.
chanaa	=	chanaa	- pui khat pu khatna rui puanhmei nggaanvmei nunc; - pu chanaa nunc rui puanhmei nggaanvmei nunc; - pouh chanaa nunc rui puanhmei kiktaat nggaanvmei nunc.
punav	=		- kapu kanac.
puinav	=		- kapui kanac.
tanpui-puningc	=		- pui-pu khatnamei mpouh luh nunc; - chanaa punav nac mpouh luh nunc.
swanrey	=		- pui-pu nchamcmei nah aluh nunc; - kaikhwang khatnamei nah aluh nunc;

nei-mau	=	-	neih lev mauh.
ning-tan	=	-	now lev tanpui
chanaapui	=	-	chanaa now nunc;
kaipui	=	-	kaikhwang khatnamei now nunc.

13.9.0 KAWMEI LWAN (Addressing Terms)

Zaat khat puilat khou kawmei lwan - pu-chaih, pui-neih kawmei lwan khatnic riangruaih kasuihmei lwan nai e. Mi hei Ruangmei zaat nic nthukna tat re. Kabangc khou kawmei lwan asaekc hylou e.

pouh	=	pu pu, pupu pu; pui pu, puipu pu	
peih	=	pu pui, pupui pui; pui pui, puipui pui	
Pu	=	Pu, Pu Ravguangc	
pu	=	pu, apu, aputhauh	- apu daihmei, pudaihmei apu thyammei, puthyammei
		paa, apaa	- paa, apaa, paathyammei, paadaihmei (paa, apaa)
Pulauc, Punau	=	apulauc apulaucmei apunau aputhyammei, paathyamei	
pui	=	pui, apui apuithauh apuilauc	- apui daihmei, puidaihmei - apui laucmei, puilaucmei apui thyammei, puithyammei
		maa, amaa	- maa, /amaa, /maathyammei, maadaihmei

			(maa, amaa hei reynungc thu kaw mak ge, tihkic aseicdou thu geicna kaw the. Paa, maa hei universal swmei pu-pui ta kawmei latkaeng e.)
chaibungc	=	achaicbungc	- puanc nchamcmei nggaanvmei gaanvthauhmei nunc;
			- chanaa gaanvthauhmei nunc;
chaimauc/chailuc	=		- puanc nchamcmei aluh gaanvthauhmei nunc;
puilauc	=	puilauc	- apulauc now
			- chaphwmmei kai ntumei, chaphwmmeiluc tunac gaanvthauh maihmei;
chai/puinau	=	chai, puinau	- chaibungc now
pouh	=	pouh	
		apouc	- Chaphwmmeipu, kaikhwang baihmei gaanvthauh nunc
			- pui kaikhwangmei ngaanvmei gaanvthauh nunc;
			- pouh chaeng ny, chaih chaeng ny thay nthan makmei gaanvthauh guay;
poubungc	=	apoucbungc	- pui lev nreih ndaamei nggaanvmei gaanvthauhmei nunc;
		apoucrav	- (Meic asaekc na rui mi hei kaw e.)
neih	=	neih, aneic	- pu tanpui nunc; - now pui; - pouh now.

13.10.0 CHAKHUANG LAT

Zaatc khat zamh puilat khou chakhuang lat khatnic kawmei lwan nai e. Mi hei Ruangmei zaat khou nic nthukna tat re.Chakhuang lat khatnic kawmei lwan nthuihpui mei ta tei ncham nchei chuythaupui mei, meicphaatmei, ramhthaymei, daicthaupui mei, nyngtyngmei kaw e.

Kabangc khou hei Ruangmei puilat sinswmei chakhuang lat lwan asaekc hylou e.

(1)	Nyan the, zaengswlou tho	-	Nyan the, zip la tho.
(2)	Peipouc tei mphaih bam di he.	-	Peipouc tei zip bam di he.
(3)	Dui bun nchulou la ho	-	Duilow nchu la ho.
(4)	Nap phanvlou thi ny ?	-	Nap tu tha ?
(5)	Mpaeng tat ni he, dui tat ni he	-	Toilet tat ni he.
(6)	Kairangv key ni he	-	Latrine tat ni he.
(7)	Ramh chaeng tat ni he	-	Latrine tat ni he.
(8)	Zouhbuangc hei puanclou o.	-	Zouh zangv o.
(9)	Kaamcthau khwan tho de.	-	Tat tho de.
(10)	Kai biak ganvrih di kho	-	Kai tat di kho.
(11)	Mitei haamvlaanlou na ro	-	Mitei tiilaanlou o. Laalaanlou o.
(12)	Khanghpy guangtangclou bam the	-	Khanghpy guang bam the.
(13)	Khanghpy rui sinthaulou rey pwni.	-	Khangpy rui tuthaulou rey pwni.
(14)	Latgay tuang lugay tuang saalou pwng e.	-	Gay gay khang saalou pwng e.
(15)	Theikw theinav nganvna ningtow bam bam pwni e.	-	Nthuandou nganvna ningtow pwni e.

13.11.0 CHAP-RIAK LAT (Cultural Terms)

(1)	bamvbuc	-	kailuangc khou lungc nchamcmei rav - kailuangc swang.
(2)	baanhruh dunghmei	-	nap geicna laa lana, rav latdyn thei layna raengcpatmei khwmkihmei ngai.

(3)	baanhzaa	- napgav zouhgav zangvmei, rav-rih chaeng kasuihmei gaanthauh nunc.
(4)	baanh keymei	- (i) baimei, kagitmei. (ii) Laudy khou nap sing.
(5)	buybaeng mun khimmei	- latpat lupatmei ganv khou buy baeng sin lana sw ni de, bai ni, dap ni twmei ganv khou pei khou guak daplouna thingcloumei
(6)	chanunghdui paengc	- kaisuh duipaengc, mbaanv mik rui how makmei theihmei kaanpatpui duipaengc.
(7)	chuk	- paapc
(8)	chukswmei	- Paapc kuak khang thouh swmei ta e. Chukswmei twmei thu chuk thouc swmei, paapc-raapc kuak khang thouh swmei twtuang e. Chuk thouc swethei chuk-zak kuak khang gah rou pwni.
(9)	chuksw gahroumei	- chuk thouc sw lana, paapc-raapc, khuay-byang sw nthanmei. **Chukswmei** twethei nuh the. **Gahroumei** twmei latkaeng hei lou mak sihnic nuh de.
(10)	daanhsaanhmei	- akumh pwni cho san zauhmei.
(11)	dui luiduk loukeymei	- nowzaymei tangv nowlat saa mak khou taancreymei swreymei dwan.
(13)	ganthianghmei	- nahpuanhmei
(14)	gaanvchangc	- karacpouc paek karihmei nunc
(15)	kairau	- kaikhunhmei theic reyna rav mbaih kanmei nunc
(16)	kanit	- nthukmei kamung karuang, sucpamc nahpuanhmei, theihmei-suhmei patmei tangv kazaeng kuak khang tingmik ngaekna bammei.

(17) kiakzaapui kaibang - karacpeic nunc phwam kaibang.

(18) khangbuanh - gaanvthauh paek karihmei khangchu khou khangtan nunc khatnic nggaanv nunc ruc khou kapy swmei.

(19) khangchu (khangchiu) - nggaanv nunc zip kariu, dymdwan kariupui kai.

(20) khangtan - puliauh nunc.

(21) khaengmei - nkhangvna, tipian khang khouringh swluaina, zeikeyna katmei

(22) luchu/kailu (liuchiu/kailiu) - tunac nunc zip kariu, dymdwan kariupui kai.

(23) lumhthianghmei - mphuammei taektw tu makna neimei.

(24) manvthing riammei - nowmanv loukeymei

(25) mat - khuay phaan khapmei, pei khatnic charuangc latzan rui saakeylouna khapmei.

(26) mwangzam thanvmei - mwang kahak khourui saapatmei ta nkingmei.

(27) mavthiancmei kaibang - meicpui phwam kaibang.

(28) mailaekmei - nowsuanhmei thouc (act of marriage)

(29) munthimmei - lat saa makna neimei, taanhmei

(30) munthianghmei - ramhtu ramhzangv makna neimei.

(31) nahsan kanhmei - puanhmei lev kariang naina nah ta suaihiamloumei.

(32)	neimei	- kamungh, khatnic thouh luaimei, tingkwm khou pat reymei kadathdatmei, charyn charavmei patmei, - mi kumhmei tingmik/ganv khou siituang rouctuang pat mak khang Ravguangc ta ningtowna raenghbangc key makna kailuangc khou bammei.
(33)	nowloukeymei	- now tii khang nuhloumei (Now di the twna dingkeyloumei)
(34)	nkhacna nac	- kapu kalwn thaymakpui mei, nac.
(35)	nkhu nruna	- alauc khou rui kapui kapu ntamv zaicna lunghpui mei.
(36)	paengchwmei	- tunac nggaanv swna theihmei.
(37)	pei	- latdym ludwanmei kailuangc gaanvthauh phwam.
(38)	pei kai	- kailnangmei latdym ludwan kai.
(39)	phaypat baanh patmei	- abai adapmei
(40)	ravpui nu ndy	- rav chu mak khou.
(41)	raengbungh, bwanlungna	- si
(42)	raenghtwanmei	- namv ganclouna tatmei
(43)	samvtwanmei	- lat piu makna namvpaan dihpaan zaypak tatmei.
(44)	si ruak rawkhamvmei	- latpat lupatmei kanei kak khou lat swna saathau makmei hu khou zaenghuaymei swna khouringh swluai reymei.

(45)	swang	- kailuangcmei namvmei rui rav the twna lwmmei, suangloumei thingdaih, tauhdaih, khow.
(46)	takaanc	- theihmei ta phupmei nunc khang kiiloumei khouringh, guak-guaih.
(47)	talow dui	- nthanmei dui, kakhw dui (chapriak, ravswmei lev kariang naimei)
(48)	taraengv kadaicmei	- thingpaek kai, kaihiak hyloumei, kaichei duancloumei kai, rav latdyn thei layna taancpatmei kai tei guaih, guak dow lana khwmkihmei ngai.
(49)	taruaih	- theihmei nunc lungc khanvpui bamv, kadat kadaengvmei, mbaanv mik rui how makmei kandih khat.
(50)	tingkuh	- namv khou ravpy, tingku dihgutmei.
(51)	thianh	- charuangc phwam - thianhdaihmei, thianhchungmei, thianchuangcmei, - mi kumcna nai e.
(52)	thingrau ruay	- pak khanv lungc khanvloumei, pakzin pakzaana lunghmei
(53)	zei latai	- sii sii khang nthuan ndina swpui mei
(54)	zei haan phunghmei	- latlu mpwanpui mei, latlu naipui mei.
(55)	zouhpaanv keymei	- Ravguangc khou mpouhtowmei, champouhna kalummei.
(56)	zouhluhmei	- zouh zangv kariumei mung, khwmkihmei mung.

RAVRIH (Diseases)

(57)	bungphianmei	- diarrhoea
(58)	duirav	- jaundice, hepatitis, cirrhosis
(59)	guaipuang nkhu	- hooping cough
(60)	gwang	- goiter
(61)	muanghguammei	- cataract
(62)	mpaam	- smallpox
(63)	mpouc geymei	- enteric/viral fever
(64)	mphaanhmei	- leprosy
(65)	mphi	- measle
(66)	nchiatrav	- cancer
(67)	nggai	- skin ulceration
(68)	nkhourav	- pulmonary tuberculosis
(69)	nkhu	- cold
(70)	nkhu-nkhou	- cough
(71)	ntei	- scabies
(72)	pukdun	- worm infestation
(73)	ravman	- malaria
(74)	ravmanhmei	- fever
(75)	ravpyan	- epidemic
(76)	sutakna	- boil
(77)	tingthai	- chickenpox
(78)	zeibaamei	- dysentry
(79)	zouckhacrav	- mum
(80)	zeiswngmei	- hemorrhage

KATHAIDWAN-29

1. Ruangmei zaat khou phwm azuh nai cho? Tabuibui tei cho?
2. Phwm theilayna khwang guay hy o.
3. Gai tabui ta cho? Gai azuh nai cho?
4. Khugyang lwan twmei hei tabui ta cho?
5. Tabui tei cho dinc o.
   (a) Thianh
   (b) Kailu
   (c) Tingkuh

6. Tabui ta cho duina saa o.
   (a) Chaphwm chaki
   (b) Zeizik
   (c) Riangruaih
7. Tabui ta cho? Dinc o.
   (a) Duirav
   (b) pukdun
   (c) ravmanhmei
   (d) mphi
   (e) mpaam

CHADAADWAN
(Test 6)

1. Kachuc bammei latrian tabui ta cho? Kabangc khou tiiloumei latrian zaat hei latrian khat khat hy o.

   (a) Chalahna Ndauhmei Latrian

   _____

   (b) Hamhmei Ndauhmei Latrian

   _____

   (c) Thanvmei Latrian

   _____

   (d) Thouhmei Latrian

   _____

2. Kidaamei Gat (Degree of Comparison) kagat kathumh nai e. Tabui tabui tei cho?

3. 'Saengc' sinswna Kidaamei Gat gaatmei twn hy suaklou o.
   (a) Nriangc bungc _____ e.
   (b) Mpeih bungc _____ e.
   (c) Mpui bungc _____ e.

4. Grammar khou Semantic twmei hei tabui ta cho ? Semantic kazaat azuh nai cho?

5. Tiiloumei latrian khou hei Dictionary zamh kabah khatnic Grammar zamh kabah tei dinc o.
Katuang latrik amaan kan the.

(a) Dictionary zamh kabah naimei latkaeng guay -

_____

(b) Grammar zamh kabah naimei latkaeng guay -

_____

6. Lat Matat Hiak azuh nai cho ? Kahiak guay tei bracket lungc khou hyna lyan o.

7. Ruangmei zaat khou phwm azuh nai cho? Phwm zanc tei hy o.

8. Nang rui thaymei Kaikhwang zanc chanei hy o.

9 Tabui ta cho? Dinc o.
(a) bamvbuc
(b) chuk
(c) kairau
(d) kanit
(e) swang

10. Nyngtyng Latchap tabui ta cho? Nyngtyng Latchap kanei hyna kabah dinc o.

11. Latthiap tabui ta cho? Latthiap kanei hyna kabah dinc o.

PART III

PHUAKNA HYMEI
(Composition)

14.0 PACNA THAYMEI
(Comprehension)

Tiiloumei latlangv khat pac lana kabah thay ngammei ta **Comprehension** twna thay e. Lat ncham bammei nchamnac nunc hei adihkamv thay the cho ? Mihei thay nuh khang dinhmei nunc rui latlangv asaekc tii lana nchamnac nunc ta khwan pat makna tipac lana kabah thayna pacthay tha twmei tei zauc pwni. Mi tihei Comprehension Test kaw e. **Pacna Thaymei** (Comprehension Test) twmei thaydwan khouhei latlangv asaekc pac lana kabah thay ngam dai twmei chadaa khang tiilou e.

Tiiloumei latlangv tei dinhmei rui latthanv kathiak geicna thanv nuh e -

(1) Duina dawmei latthanv
(2) Dui maihna dawmei latthanv
(3) Nchumh nkhuai dinhmei latthanv

- mi kumhmei hei zauc nuh e.

Latthanv guay khou kazauhmei latkaeng guay hei latlangv hamhethei pary kiak khoutei kazauh nina e twmei maek ge. Kumna latthanv khatnic latdaw khou kazauhmei latkaeng guay hei nchamnac nunc rui kaniw raana sinsw thaymei latkaeng raana di the twna laa nuh e.

Comprehension akumhna sw ne ?

(1) Reymei khou, tiilou bammei latlangv tei pac mincna pac lana mi latlangv khoutei naimei kadwn swmei latbamv tei thay nthan khang sw nina e.

(2) Kaneimei khou, latlangv tei kalungc khou naimei guay ta thay nthan khang lunghgutna pac nina e, khatnic kalangv thay nthan nina e.

(3) Kathumhmei khou, latthanv guay tei pac lana nchamnac karaana zamh gaymei latkaeng guay tei sinsw lana gay ranvmei latkwm latgwan khou latdaw tii khang sw nina e.

(1) COMPREHENSION SW-NCHINLOUMEI

Neih khat Ravguangc Samtyngphianhmeipu tei kalungning amanv mak hakna bam khou kadaeng khou thaymak daekna Ravguangc Muc Charav Kandihmeipu guang khwan e. Samtyngphianhmeipu tei kazaw nkhumkeyna nchwng bammei ta tei dingna zauc kanak khwan-e. Samtyngphianhmeipu rui amanv mak hakna nchwng bammei lam tei kamei rui thanv khwan e. Kalat tei chulouna Samtyngphianhmeipu rui daw khwan e - "Rav guay hei anac raana de. Gaymei rav nunc khat khat ta nzian kariu, lwmgay karina bam e, tihkic siimei rav nunc khat khat ta zauczih kari, lwmsi karina bam e. Mi hei rui alungning ta khatsihnic nchu nrina zaeng ti-nthaekc tow mak khe." Mi lat hei chulou lana Ravguangc Muc tat kan the.

Ravguangc Muc tei rav guay daeng khou guang lana rav guay lev ariu khwan e. Siimei rav nunc tei rui Ravguangc Muc lat tei kakiak na sihnic chulou makna Ravguangc Muc tatei mphut kasic kasicna kamwang kamwang pian khang saa khwan e. Tihkic gaymei rav nunc rui thu Ravguangc Muc ta chakhuang champouhna "He Amuh Daihmei ! Aniu zamh nkhuaimei, ntwn makmei guay aniu khou dinclou o. Tabuibui lat thanh lu thanh nai tu cho saalouna ro" twna saa khwan e.

Latthanv :-

(i) Nang raana daw o.

(a) Ravguangc Samtyngphianhmei tabui lwnlung khou bam khou Ravguangc Muc Charav Kandihmeipu guang kan tu cho ?

(b) Ravguangc rui Ravguangc Muc khou tabui saa kan cho ?

(c) Ravguangc Muc rui thow thow ta ariu kan cho ?

(d) Ravguangc Muc ta thow thow rui mphutna saa kan cho ?

(e) Gaymei rav nunc Ravguangc Muc khou tabuibui saa kan cho ?

(ii) Nchumh nkhuai dinc o.

(a) Siimei rav nunc tei khat khat ta lwmgay kari e.
(nkhuai e/nchumh e)

(b) Samtyngphianhmei lat chulouna Ravguangc Muc kalungpuamc khwan e.
(nkhuai e/nchumh e)

(c) Gaymei rav nunc rui Ravguangc Muc ta chakhuang sw khwan e.
(nkhuai e/nchumh e)

(d) Ravguangc Muc ti hei Charav Kandihmeipu twna nic kaw e.
(nchumh e/nkhuai e)

Latdaw

(i) (a) Neih khat Samtyngphianhmei kalunging amanv makna nchwng bammei ganv khou Ravguangc Muc Charav Kandihmeipu guang khwan e.

(b) Ravguangc Samtyngphianhmei rui saa khwan e "Rav guay hei anac raana de. Gaymei rav nunc khat khat ta nzian kariu, lwmgay karina bam e, tihkic siimei rav nunc khat khat ta zauczih kari, lwmsi karina bam e. Mihei rui alungning ta khatsihnic nchu nrina zaeng ti-nthaekc tow mak khe."

(c) Ravguangc Muc tei rav guay daeng khou guang lana rav guay lev ariu khwan e.

(d) Siimei rav nunc tei rui Ravguangc Muc ta mphut kasic kasicna kamwang kamwang pian khang saa khwan e.

(e) Gaymei rav nunc rui thu Ravguangc Muc ta chakhuang champouhna "He Amuh Daihmei ! Aniu zamh nkhuaimei, ntwn makmei guay aniu khou dinclou o. Tabuibui lat thanh lu thanh nai tu cho saalouna ro" twna saa khwan e.

(ii) (a) nkhuai e.

(b) nkhuai e.

(c) nchumh e.

(d) nchumh e.

(2) TIILOUMEI LATLANGV HEI PAC LANA KABANGC KHOU TIILOUMEI LATTHANV HEI DAW O.

Pumhgaymei hei maansei khang daic liangmei lanv e. Maansei pumc gayna khatnic suh tuang nuh tuang maekna bam khang pumh kalw nina e. Kaganv chaana tumei, zangvmei, taanhmei khatnic pumh kalw kalatmei hei kage e.

Pumh gay ethei lungning gaymei pat re, nyngtyng guang e. Lungning gaymei nyngtyng khourui nkauhmei, gaymei chwn pat re. Pumh gaymei khou neihlaamei nai e, taanc nii ruaic niimei chwn pat re, nthei khang hu khang ningpat re. Pumhgaymei thu tu zuhzu, zangv zuhzu, zip zuhzu e.

Pumhgaymei twmei thu ravrih maekmei, pumh ndui ndaamei, taanh khang ruaih khang ngammei, tat khang pak khang biumei pumc ta e.

Latthanv

(i) Nang raana daw o.

(a) Maansei khang daic liangmei lanv tabui tei cho ?

(b) Pumh kalwmei hei tabui khang gaeng cho ?

(c) Pumh gaymei khou tabui tabui pat bo ?

(d) Pumh gaymei twmei hei tabui ta cho ?

(ii) Nchumh nkhuai dinc o.

(a) Pumhgaymei hei maansei khang daic liangmei lanv e *(nchumh e, nkhuai e)*

(b) Pumh gay ethei mphut tanc e. *(nkhuai e, nchumh e)*

(c) Pumh gayna bam khang kalw kalat nina e. *(nkhuai e, nchumh e)*

(d) Pumhgaymei thu ravrih maekmei ta e. *(nkhuai e, nchumh e)*

(3) LATLANGV HEI KHWAN PAT MAKNA REIHREINA PAC LANA THANVBAMMEI LATHANV GUAY HEI DAW O.

Lat khat saa pwkhou hamhethei hy pwkhou mi lat zamh kalingmei lwnlung na tei sinsw nina e twmei lat maek ge. Saabam hybammei mei kakhang kadow chaamei, gaymei theilayna sinsw nuh de. Lat kahak hei gaanv khatna zamh charay puat hamh e. Meicguayna kariumei puiruhnac zamh e. Kaganv kaganv khou lat lwn-gwan hei kalaicpat-gut re. Puilat baihbaihmei mei nunc rui kaniw nchamc pary parav rahmei ganv khou lat baihmei khat zamh lwn-gwan lay nzeic khang nthuk thuai mak ge. Diangc pwkhou khatnic kariu karaa pwkhou lat khat lev khat kariu karaa gutmei, latkaeng sinswgutmei hei kachav e. Lat guay khou zaatc daihmei hamhethei gay-nkauhmei lat zamh thiak nzeicmei hei kachav de. Mi kumhmei lat hei meicgeihmei rui thaynii e, nchamnii e. Mi kumhmei lat hei saathiat gay e. Mi ruc khoutei, puilat khou na saa suak kunghmei latbamv tei saapat khang daicthau hianmei baihmei lat zamh latkaeng sinswmei zamh kalam azuh nai e.

LATTHANV

1. Lat hei charay zamh puat cho ? Kalam tiina hy o.
2. Lat lwnlung akumhna kalaicpat-gut bo ?
3. Akumhmei lat ta meicgeihmei rui ncham nii bo ?
4. Lat baihmei ncham niimei khatnic laagut nimei lam guay tabuibui tei cho hy o.

Karuc khou latthanv guay hei daw khang latdangv khouhei naimei kaley khou hyriatloumei latrian guay mincna thay khang kage nai e. Mi latkaeng guay khouteirui nang raana zamh latrian hy lana daw nina e.

(4) LATLANGV HEI KHWAN PAT MAKNA REIHREINA PAC LANA KABANGC KHOU TIILOUMEI LATTHANV GUAY DAW O.

Baihmei latbamv khat ningtow e, nthukmei thu hamh e. Aniu meic geicnganv tan rui chaeng khou tat bam e. Telephone number khat amuc pwng e twna chaeng khou che kiak khatna keylou tu zauc e hythaulou khang. Meicgeihmei gutna chaeng khou khoutei che kiak khatna khuaic me phu e,

mphang kan mak ge. Mi khoutei aniu khang kadathdat khwan e. Mphuam mphaamei India zamh chaeng khou daicthaumei aniu, che kiak khatna nganvna keylou makmei kandic khou guang pwmei. Aniw kandic khou kumcna chaeng khou kaigeymei mei how mak ge. Akumhna kaniw chaeng guay heicdi nthanna bam tu cho? Nkhamh khou thu aniu nic thaypat the - gari nthaekcbamv parking, meic guay guang kariupui bamv, tatna zauhpui bamv, public park hamhethei resturant khou guangmei mei kapwmna plastic khaulauna khatkhat sin lana kadaeng kadaeng khou keylou bammei che kiakkiak, mphuammei guay kathouc kadwan swna khuaicthau e. Mi tei kumcna mphuam mphaamei khuaicganhmei tei mpeyna swchuymei nunc taanv swna laa bam e. Mphuammei guay tei khuaic lana kadaeng khou naimei 'dust bin' khat khou phaiclou e. Meic kathuihna rui mi hei kumcna chaeng hei nthan-nthinghna lou khang ningmei zaat timei tho Japan hei kaguayna pangc khou nthan nthinghmei kandic e twna saa pwkhou tabui kadathdat bam khang naina cho ?

LATTHANV

1. Che kiak phumei tei mphang kan bo?
2. India zamh chaeng lwnlung akumh bo?
3. Japan khou akumhmei taanv ta 'swchuymei nunc taanv' swna laa bo?
4. Japan akumhmei zaat cho?

Latthanv hei daw khang latdangv khouhei kariang naimei latkaeng guay nuhkamv katumcna phu nina e khatnic latkaeng guay khouteirui nang raana zamh latdaw kasiamh lana daw nina e.

15.0 TATDYN HYMEI

15.1 LATPUANH TATDYN
(Letter of Complaint)

Tatdyn hymei lam khou tabui tabui ncham kan tha ?

Class six lev seven khou charay tatdyn khatnic lanvguanh lanvdaenghmei tatdyn hymei lam khou ncham kan the. Tatdyn hymei lwan asaekc nic kathai kan the. Kumna mi latrik zamh Part III khouhei **Latpuanh Tatdyn** lam kathai kho.

Class six lev seven khou composition lam khou ncham kan the. Kumna mi khouhei thu composition lam khou katwan katwanna ncham khang swlou mak khe. Karaa karaana ramthai khatnic karaa karaana latkaeng sinsw lana hypat ngam khang madancna swlou the.

Kalam, puatc, taanv khatnic meic zaeng khou guangtangh makmei, swkasicloumei, taanc chuylou makmei, kariak theilayna swmakmei, ngamvzi kabiumei - mi kumhmei lam khou kwn makmei ndauhna latpuancku khang hymei tatdyn ta **Latpuanh Tatdyn** (letter of complaint) twna thay e.

Latpuanh Tatdyn hei kalam kazi chaamei sw nina e. Kwn makmei lam tei nuhkamv ntanghna hylou nina e. Latpuanh tatdyn tei kaphianhlou pwnimei khang ta thuanckumei latkaeng saatowlou nina e.

Kabangc khouhei latkamv kanei hylou e, zauc kho.

(1) Meic khat ruc khou latpuanckumei

Khou

Luangmai, Ginkihbw 10, 2014

Post Master,
Imphal Head Post Office,
Imphal - 795001

Kalam :- Postman taanv taanc chuy makmei lam.

Champouh,

Chakhuang rui chaeng huna kapou katiangc swbammei Post Master bamv khou mi latbamv hei latpuanckulou e. Kalam thu Gaypuilanv, Luangmai post

office khou Postman sw bammei hei kathouc kadwan khou lunghgutna taanh mak khe. Tatdyn guay kaganv chaana nzanhpat mak ge, kai kai khou tatdyn suancguang mak ge. Tatdyn guay chaengluang khou tatbammei alauc nunc khou nsinzin nsinzaalou e. Nthukmei tatdyn asaekc laancpatlouna tiiguang e. Company khourui nsaa tiiguangmei catalogue, journal, magazine tii kadat kadaengloumei katup guang the. Zaeng charuk chanei hu thangc post office khou guangtangc kanmei tatdyn aseicna suancguang e. Tatkanmei bw khou Delhi khourui akhang mpuatcloumei tatdyn aseic nganv suangcguanglou makna kaganv swrilou the. Ai kata ariuna tatdyn guay kaganv chaana nzanhpat khang zaenghuayna saa liang kanei kathumh kan e, tihkic lunghgutna nkinglou mak ge, kalaihmei nic maek ge.

Kumhpui zaengrui nzianlouna taanvpy swbammei nang rui kata kathouc thayna taanc chuyna taanh khang latdanv khat patlou khang zaenghuay e.

Karith laalouna nang rui taanclou pwnimei khang ta lwmgayna thuancku e.

Nang rui lwmlou nuhmei,

(Kadwnbi Pamei)
Tiangkuanzaengc
Luangmai - 795 159

(2) Office akhat ruc khou latpuanckumei

Khowpyluangc,
August 10, 20014

Khou

Director of Education,
Government of Manipur
Imphal.

Kalam :- School guang makmei Headmaster ruc khou latpuanckumei.

Champouh,

Chakhuang sw bammei School Education Department zamh kapy swbammei meicgaymei nang bamv khou puiruhnac khyn swna mi latpuanc tatdyn hei tiiku bam e. Nzianlouna mi latbamv hei taanv swna katumcna sinthaulou khang zaenghuay e.

Kalam thu - Khowpyluangc High School zamh Headmaster Kabilung school khou regular sw mak ge. Kumtina dinhmei nunc nic kalwn luicna school guang mak kahouh the. Mi Headmaster hei aseic mian school guang makmei bw 3 tangc the.

Headmaster Kabilung lwn khourui dinhmei asaekc nic guanlaeng ngam the. Nchamnac nunc nic laeng ngamna class laa chuyri mak khe. Kumna alauc nunc panty hei neihkhat neihkhat khang maankeyna bam the.

School khou bamvpaeng, pahpaeng, bamvngangv, black board - mikumhmei guay kasic ngam the. School kailung kaphut ngam the, kaidaeng nnum ngam the, raenghmun kasic khithkhit key the khatnic pih guay kaekna punkey ngam the. Mi school hei kapouc katiangc maek kumc bam the. Miguay hei Headmaster rui kathouc thay mak khourui raana the.

Milam khouhei Khowpyluangc Village Authority rui kata ariuna pary rac the, tihkic kamei rui lat daihdaihmei saana aniw lat ta nking chuyrilou mak ge. Kathiak nic kalaihmei howpat mak khe, kalaic pwlak ge.

Kumhpui zaengrui kathouc kadwan thaymakmei Headmaster Kabilungc tihei laapat lana dinhmei gaymei khat ta Headmaster swna katumcmei lungc khou ndiuguanglou khang latpuanckuloupui tuang e.

Puiruhnac khang ning kadanlouna mi latbamv hei katumcna kaphianhlou pwng e twna lwmgay e.

Nang rui lwmlou nuhmei

(Namvsinlungc)
Chairman,
Khowpyluangc Village Authority,
Khowpyluangc

Tithaylou khang khatnic action laathaulou khang:

1. Deputy Commissioner, Tamenglong.

   Mi lam khou nzianlouna State Government zamh kariang naimei kapouc katiangc guay khou tithaylouna taanv sinthaulou khang zaenghuay e.

2. Zonal Edfucvation Officer/Tamenglong.

   Milam khouhei katumcna taanv sinthaulou khang zaenghuay e.

15.2 LANVGUANH TATDYN

Maansei hei kapumc kahak pary rah khang, kachuc khang kadow chaa mak pwkhou kamei rui saa niimei latbamv tei tatdyn hyna tithay e. Thowkumhmei rui latbamv tei meic guayna thay nchamc nuh khangrui, thowkumhmei rui kariak theilayna office khou record swna lou bam khang kage naipui zaeng rui tatdyn hei kage nai e. Kumna ntaw kaanc thu kalam guayna khou tatdyn hyna tiimei hei nthukmei gee sw the.

Aseicdou daicthaumei ganv khouhei thu Internet khou tatdyn hyna kadyngdyng khou titat nuh the. Kumna reynungc che khou tatdyn hy lana mpuatc bammei khouteirui kalaihmei naiguang the. Computer paan khourui kakwn kakuaic bammei guay khou kadyngdyng khou lat-lu mphauh nuh ngam the.

Lanvguanh lanvdaenghmei lev kariang naina alamvmei, puatchei, syandui mpuatc pat-gut khang hymei tatdyn zaat ta **lanvguanh tatdyn** twna thay e.

Lanvguanh lanvdaenghmei tatdyn hy khou tiitangclou nimei zanc, kabamv tei mbai biak kapy tin khoutei hylou nina e. Mi gei khoutei nzat biak katin khou tiimei zanc khatnic kabamv hylou nina e. Mi bangc khoutei bwzaeng nic hylou nina e. Charay tatdyn hymei lam khou class six khou ncham kan the, lanvguanh lanvdaenghmei tatdyn hymei lam nic taleina ncham kan the. Kumna lanvguangh lanvdaenghmei tatdyn hymei lam khou taleina kathai nkuan dat kho.

Latkamv (1)

Gaadaic Book Stores khou latrik kazaat padeih laana tiiguang khang tatdyn hymei

Silchar, Assam
June 10, 2014

Khou,

Manager,
Gaadaic Book Stores,
Jadonang Road,
Tamenglong.

- Champouhmei Manager,

Chakhuang swna Manager khou zaenghuay guang e. Kalam thu kabangc khou hyloumei latrik guay hei nang tuang book store khou nai e twna chu e. Mi latrik guay hei akhang kage nai bam e. Kumhpui zaeng rui mi latrik guay hei bill kazauhna VPP(Value Payable Parcel) swna tiiguanglou pw o.

	Latrik zanc	*Kasing*
1.	Poujairung Thaimei rui hymei **'Luchyam'**	2
2.	Fr.Francis T.J. rui hymei **'Ruangmei-Anglo-Ruangmei Dictionary'**	2
3.	Dr.L.Kamal rui hymei **'Madhabi'**	2
4.	Rev.Mp.Namthiurei rui hymei **'Lwnlung Dictionary'**	2

Azamh address kabangc khou hylou e. Mikhouhei tiiguanglou pw o.

Thuancku e.

Nangniw rui lwmlou nuhmei,

(Thuanckulungc Daenghmei)
Kaguiluang P.O.Silchar, Cachar (Assam)

Latkamv (2)

M/s Zion Computers khou M/s Cheibuangpu Traders rui computer liu khang hymei tatdyn.

CHEIBUANGPU TRADERS

Gaidimjang, Khoupum Valley,Tamenglong District, Manipur

Khoupum Valley,
Nahnubw 15, 2014

Khou,

M/S ZION COMPUTERS
Paona Bazar,
Imphal - 795147

Champouhmei Manager,

Kabangc khou hyloumei puat guay hei aniu laanii e, zuanc dat khang e. Nzianlouna kati kamanv guay, commission azuh swlou nuh cho twmei khatnic payment tii nimei thiak kaguayna hy lana tithayguanglou pw o. Tithayguanglou zaic liu zaic pwni e.

Puatc zanc	***laa nimei sing***
1. PC Monitor	10
2. CPU (Central Production Unit)	10
3. Keyboard	10
4. UPS (Uninterrupted Power Supply)	10

Baihmei nsunh ntuaih guay thu laamei ganv khoutei payment tiina liu pwni.

Thuancku e.

Nang rui lwmmei

Cheibuangpu Traders Khyn swna

(R.Gaybwan)
Proprietor

(3) Charay Tadyn

Puiluanh khou bammei Lwmgaypou Gwanmei rui Guigayluangc, Imphal khou bammei kapammei Kadwnbi Gaengmei khou 'Railway chaeng kasiamhpatna neihlaamei' lam khou khou letter khat hy e. Mitei kabangc khou lyanlou e.

Puiluanh,
Puiluanh, P.O.Luangba,
Tamenglong District, Manipur
Twnngaibw 10, 2014

Khou

Kadwnbi Gwanmei,
Guigayluangc, Imphal

Nzianmei Kadwnbi,

Kaganv tingsaenghmei tangv mi tatdyn launa hei hy bam e. Nang pumhgayna neihlaana bam kan e twna lwm e.

Aseicdou aram Puiluanh hei peyna kalaicguang the, gay maih bam the. Mi ruc khoutei Railway kasiamhpatmei hei rui taanv-dui kadow chaamei azuh nic kailuangcmei laatow bam e. Kumna mi Railway hei kasiamh luai kanethei Manipur khou lunghmei kapwmna khang gay daihmei sw pwnimei khangtei neihlaana bam e. Kumna Railway patmei hei rui ramhthayna chamkhaanv chamdaanv bammei nunc khang thu kadow chaamei tei nai pwni e twna lwm e. Mi khangtei nang aniw nic ntaw rui lungning howducna chamkhaanv chamdaanv bam khang kage nai the.

Nang taanv nsaamei ganv akhat khou aram Puiluanh khou ngginpat guai o. Neihkhat na sihnic bam nchamclouna pary parav rah khang peyna nai e.

Aseic khang swna thu khouhei nganvlou kan ni the. Ravguangc rui suaihiam geicna tiilou bammei swdiu o.

Nang rui lwmgaymei,

(Lwmgaypou Gwanmei)

KATHAIDWAN

1. Tatdyn tabui cho? Latpuanh Tatdyn tabui cho?

2. Duikhun swkasicloupui zaeng Pei khou latzan swlou khang Latpuanh Tatdyn khat Peipouc khou hy o.

3. Hospital khou doctor bam makmei lam khou DC/Tamenglong khou complaint letter khat hy o.

4. Nang pammei Kakhanggay Kohima khou latrik ncham bammei khang tatdyn akhat hy o. Tatdyn khoutei nang Exam pass swna neihlaamei chamv tithayna hylou o.

16.0 ESSAY HYMEI

16.1 DESCRIPTIVE ESSAY HYMEI

Essay hymei lam khou nang tabui ncham tow kan tha ?

Descriptive Essay akumhna hy ni cho twmei lam asaekc tho class six khou ncham kan the. Mi thaydwan khouhei kabamv, kiruai, latlu naimei - mikumhmei lam khou lwnliak dinhmei latdangv swna hyna zauc kho.

(1) ZEIHLAT

Zeihlat hei Ruangmei pouhpeih pary khou kazanc naina puiruhnac rui thaymei zeih kang akhat re. Mi hei Tamenglong district zamh Makuay ramv Ahucthuak daeng khou nai e. Kadaeng khou Zeihlatzaengc, Makuay, Tuangtau, Chingkhuangluangc, Tayzyzaengc, Bamgayzaengc - ramv guay nai nkuay e.

Zeihlat hei zeih charuk nai e - Laengmaihzeic, napsaamzeic, Guiphuapzeic, Nrouczeic, Goulunghzeic, Tungpuizeic miguay hei e. Zeih launa guay thu ting keymakpui ganv khou dui thip e, ting ganv khou na dui chungc e. Tihkic, Laengmaihzeic, Guiphuapzeic lev Napsaamzeic hei thu dui thip mak ge,

kaganv thuih dui nai e. Chakaan charaa ganv khou thu dui rau muay e. Zeihlat zaengc nkuaymei khou nngouh raukey bam e. Mi hei rui dui thipkey bam e. Mi nngouh khouhei thing kazaat ntanghna thau e. Mi nwm khouhei khouringh - suc-zouc, raengh, nruay, kazaat ntanghna nai e.

Zeihlat hei pouhpeih pary lev kariang nai e. Asac lev Mikcharung kaney Zeihlat khou ntanh dyna nthaanh guangc ta nymna phiantucbuy lev thandibaeng laatow e, mi phiantucbuy lev thandibaeng tei Zeihlat khou phianlou dat kan e twna pary swna nai e.

Rav Pubuan nac mpouh Khanglynlungc nthaanh daihmei swna Zeihlat khou bam e twna pouhpeih nunc pary khou nai e. Zeihlat khou naimei nthaanh ta kazanc saa mak ge, kaibangpouc kaw e. Mi na hamhna Makuay namvmei lev Zeihlat khou bammei nthaanh nunc akhiam ndiammei pary nic nai e. Kumna Zeihlat hei Ruangmei zamh chingkhiuhchap lev kariang peyna nai e.

Zeihlat zeihdaih khou khav kazaat 10 hianna nai e. Nthaanh nic nai geic e twna saanah e. Guiphuapzeic khou guiphuap nai geic e. Goulunghzeic khou gou peyna nai e.

Zeihlat ta zauh khang tingkwm pum meickang meickang swna guang e. Zeihlat zauh khang guangmei nunc Zeihlat zeic khou hy tuangcna tat re.

Zeihlat hei tourism zamh gaymei bamv khat swna tidaicthau nuhmei bamv e.

(2) VANAMAHAUTSAV

Maansei meiclunghmei khang thing hei gancpat nuhmakmei khat re. Neihkhat neihkhat maansei rui thing sinswmei hei hianku haihhai bam e. Sinsw geic tituang thu thing dowkeymei nic hianku muay bam e. Mi kumc bam ethei neihkhat thu nngouh hei dyangkuakc ngam kan pwni ny twna lunghgeicmei nai the. Mihei tipat mak khang, nngouh hei tigaythau khang **Vanamahautsav** hei tingkwm pwm raengcpat re.

Mbaanv mei aniw khang thing hei gaeng e twmei hei aniw kapwmna nuhmei latbam di the. Aniw rui sinsw bammei zy-laeng, thingkhuk, paeng, baansin khatnic kai sw khou gutmei tiangh, kaiphuang, kairei, thingpaek guay hei thing raana the. Mi na hamhna howgaymei thyam-raa, baanhthaymei taanv zamh puat azuh nic thing khourui kasiamh e. Thing theihmei hei nap-gan suangh

khang, mai nggaan khang sinsw e. Thing downa, ruamcna, riamna syandui ntaanv-gaanvna maansei azuh khang mbaanv khou ringhchaeng sw bam e. Kabiak khat thu mi hei rui tingmik tingmik khou nngouh thingbang guay dwangkeyna nngouh ta swsuankey bam e.

Mi na hamhna maansei rui nngouh dwangkeyna namvthanh dow e, chinghlau taanc e, thingdangv dow e, thingring riam e. Kaidai, chaengpumh khatnic industry kasiamh khang nngouh dwangkey e. Thing gaikey lana thingbang khat lingc lynlou khang ningpat mak hec.

Maanseina aniw khang gaeng khang sw khou nngouh swmaankey bam e. Mi guay hei rui aseic thu maabnv hei kachaengh kalaengh khithkhit bam the khatnic nchumei dic Antartica khou naimei gunh nganvna nungckey the tw e. Nngouh dwangkeymei rui mbaanv zam nchumei-chaenghmei khatnic ting-neih gwan khou kalaihmei azuh tipatlou e. Kazi chaamakna duidaihmei khatnic tingkaenghmei tipatlou e. Kamanv kunghmei thing zaat azuh maankey bam e. Nwmbangc khou kabamv swna ringhmei khouringh, nruay, suc-zouc azuh bamv swkasic tina amaankey bam e. Miguay hei zauc pwkhou nthei thangc guang nimei lwnlung khang lunghgeic kadanmei nai e.

Thing dowkeymei khatnic nngouh dwangkuakmei hei thingclou mak gethei kandi hei syniangdic ngguanh pwni the. Mi zaengrui Vanamahautsav hei raengcpat bam tuang e. Mihei zaatc zamh thaek khou taancpat bammei thing linghmei khatnic nngouh zuakthaumei mung daihmei khat re. Mi hei tingkwm pum Duiluanghbw (July) reymei neidak khou sw e. Mi hei maek kanmei Union Minister Pouh K.M.Munshi rui 1950 kwm kahouhlou khwan e.

Aniw maanseina daeng nkuaymei khou thaubammei thingbang mwnbang guay hei tigaythaulou khang kage daicna nai e. Thingbwan, mwnbwan, tingthai bwan azuh lingclou khang kage nai e. Aniw rui lungc bammei mbaanv kandic hei aseicdou kin aniw raana tuang hamh e, nthei thangc guang nimei kinkin guay tuang tian e.

Aseicdou thu kandihmei rui nngouh tigaythau khang latdyn azuh nai the. Kumna tingkwm pum Vanamahautsav hei tatkey bam e. Mi Vanamahautsav hei nthaekc makna khatnic swchuyna tatkey bam khang puiruhnac khatnic nchamnac nunc khou mincna tithaylou khang kage daihmei e. School textbook guay khou mi lam hei tikazauhlou nina e, tizau nic tizaulou bam the. Aseicdou thu 'Save Environment' twmei slogan azuh nai the. Kandihpy khourui nngouh dwangkuakmei, maankeymei nuh mak ge. Mihei meic asaekc khang na gaengmei latbamv hamh e. Mihei maansei zaat hei nchu-zaenghna lungh khang baanhou daihmei khat the.

KATHAIDWAN

1. Descriptive Essay tabui cho? Akumhna hy ni cho?

2. Tiilkoumei zanc pangc khouhei nang rui nnguihmei kapah lana Descriptive Essay khat hy o.

   Gaidaicbut, Khoum Nzaengc, Alangh, Raengdaic

16.2 NARRATIVE ESSAY HYMEI

Narrative Essay twmei hei ramhlam khat zamh lam khou pary rahmei thiak khou hymei latdangv ta thay e. Kabangc khouhei latkamv swna **Chaeng Tangkhynkeymei** lam khou khatnic **Science Museum** lam khou hymei Narrative Essay kanei hei zauc kho.

(1) CHAENG TANGKHYNKEYMEI

Manipur hei chinghramv rui nzaengc khangsuangc daic hianmei ting riumei gat nkauhmei kandic khat re. Manipur lev state baihmei guay lev tat alamv bammei NH 2 lev NH 37 hei nic chinghramv khou tatmei rui nzaengc ramv khangsuangc hian e.

Ting riu tanhmei chingh chaeng guay khou chaeng tangkhynkeymei hei kalwnlung pat katup e. Manipur zamh Imphal-Dimapur chaeng NH 2 khou ting ganv khou chaeng tangkhynkeymei hei pat raphrap e. Tihkic kwm 2004 Duiluanghbw (July) zaeng 10 khatnic 11 zamh kariumei zingbangc Phikoma khou pat kanmei chaeng tangkhynkeymei kumhmei baihmei khat pat kan mak hec. Chaeng tei saengcna khatnic keyducna tangkhynkey khwan e. Thaurey khou chaeng nai e twmei sihnic lwm dat mak khe. Chaeng tei bihhuai bihbwng thuak ngguanh khwan e. Aniu nggintatmei nunc kai hanguang tangc pwlak khe twna ninglou kan e. Kabamv padeih tan rui kaanpat khwan e. Thing-mpeih mailuangh phungna nzuankey khwan e. Chaeng daeng khou naimei kai-saamh azuh baubing geic khwan e.

Mi kumhmei chaeng tangkhynkeymei Manipur khou patbammei zamh kadaiswmei lam tho thingding ngouhding dowkuakkeymei, chinghlau taancna ramv sw kasickeymei, mi kumhmei gauy heirui e. Ramh thau makmei chinghpaek hei dui rimgut lana kandih mbuaih e. Thingmaan rui pinc khamvlou khang thingbang maek tina thingmaan nic maek ge. Kumna ting ganv khou mi kumhmei chinghpaek guay hei mulay zay e, chaeng tangkhynkey e, thingbang mpeihpw naimei na sihnic mailuangh phung e. Manipur khou naimei chingh guay thu ntauh chingc hamh e, baby rock chyng raana de. Meic nunc khou thingbang khat gaikey lana kabwan khat lingclou lyn khang nigpat mak ge. Delhi khou 'meic khat thingbang khat' twna madanhmei khat nai e. Aniw bamv khou thu mi kumhmei madanhmei nic maek ge.

Chingh chaeng Phikoma khou tangkhynmei tei rui aniw khou ryanraamei azuh tiipat kan cho twmei zauc kho. Mi khouhei ryanraamei ariu kahakmei tho nggin chagaamei khatnic garileimei nunc e. Kaganv saengcna chaeng-pumh tei mphauh mak gethei tubamv zangbamv thay mec, suhmei nuhmei pat re, ting ding neih ding khou ryanraa khaeng e. Puatchei phunghmei gari guay puatchei guay nrumh maan e. Garithauc, maicthauc guang makna Petrol Pump, Kerosene Pump azuh nthaekc ge. Tingmik kaganv chaana tat mak khourui mpaeng-laam tat nimei nunc zamh train reservation amaan e.

Chaeng tangkhyn khourui ryanraamei mphang kahakmei nunc asaekc nic nai hec. Kai-saamh mpangv khourui namvmei nunc ta kai-saamh maekna ryanraana lungh khang swlou khwan e. Lau, nap-bi, phwnling azuh bih rui luangcliamna swkasic khwan e. Kiruai azuh theic khwan e. Kakhw kakhingh azuh amaan khwan e. Mibamv khoutei lungcbammei namvnac nunc saa ngammakmei ryanraa akhaengv khwan e.

Mi kumhmei chaeng tangkhynmei hei thingh khang kachaeng maek rap mak ge. Chaeng daeng mbai nzat thingbang ntipmei zaat lingc chuylou nina e, nnudui chaeng riat chuyna riatlou nina e, nuhkamv chaeng daeng khou chynglau ruaic lak nina e. Mi kumhmei guay hei puiruhnac aniw rui thay chuyna thaylouna taanv sw nchamc khang kage nai e.

Chaeng tangkhynmei lam khouhei saalou niimei khat nai hec. Chinghlau taanhmei khatnic thing riamna ringhlwan swbammei nunc khang ringhlwan akhat tiilynlou khang kage nai e. Nngouh thingding kuakkeymei zamh siimei guay puiruhnac thay nchamcmei kage nai e. Chaeng swgutmei ganv khou kandih, nniang gwan kathai nthan lana kaganv tingsaengcna tat nuh khang thaymei-heihmei nunc lev dymdwan rey nina e.

(2) SCIENCE MUSEUM

Museum twmei hei kalwnlung chaamvpeic tuang suc-zouc, nruay, zei naimei kalung parik guay, thingbang nlimhbang guay khatnic maanseina zamh baansyam, baanhthaymei pautchei puatruc guay ta mbaekclouna nyngtyng-tak khang kathai kariang khang ryloumei khatnic zauhpui bamv ta Museum kaw e. Duina saa pwkhou kalwnlung khatnic maansei lev kariang naimei puatchei puatruc guay mbaekclouna kabamv chaana loubammei bamv ta Museum kaw nuh e.

Mbaanv khou kazaat baihbaihmei museum peyna nai e. Mikiu thu - art museum, history zamh museum, automobile zamh museum, industries zamh museum khatnic science zamh museum mi kumhmei guay hei e. Manipur khou nic state museum khatnic charay zamh museum guay nai e. Kabangc khouhei London khou naimei museum lam khou raclou e. London khou science khatnic technology daicthau saengcthau kahouhmei zamh lwanry ta kahiak nthanna lyanloumei museum akhat re. Museum hei kwm 1909 A.D. khou kasiamh khwan e. Mi museum khou hei science tihei baanhthaymei thyam-ruai khou akumhna piuguang kan cho twmei tei nthanna lyanlou e. Latkamv swna saatow pwkhou - mi museum khouhei James Watt tuang steam engine khatnic George Stephenson tuang rocket loulyanlou e. Mi na hamhna, zawpawna bw thangc kutangc kanmei Apollo 10 zamh Command Module khatnic astronaut nunc rui paannu kanmei Space Suit lyanlou e. Miguay hei how pwkhou lungning khou kadathdatmei pat re. Space Suit tatei kahizauc nii e. Tabui langc rui kasiamh tu cho, akumhpui zaat cho thay nii e. Ai tho aseic hei Apollo 10 zamh Space Suit kaling tei how the, tihkic aniw kandic khou mi kumhmei science museum hei maek tituang thu aniw kandic khou bammei alauc nunc thu howtow mak kheni twmei lungning khou ningpat re.

Mi hamhmei azuh nic museum khoutei nai lyanlou bam e. Che kasiamh thau reymei lwnlung khatnic baihmei chalahmei machine azuh lou chuyna lou bam e. Kaganv khat khou printing press kahouhthau reymei baansin guay khatnic astronomy khatnic tinglaan lwnlung guay lou chuyna lou bam e. Mi na hamhna kaganv khat khou sinswlou khwanmei Navigation zamh lwnlung azuh puiruhnac khou lyanlou bam e. Mi kumhmei khouhei phaydyng sw lana aseic kanganv maekna daicthau bammei technology zamh machine azuh hei phungcpat kan tuang e twna saa nuh e.

Baihmei khatrui kwm 1992 A.D. zamh Gulf ric khou sinsw kanmei hi-tech zamh baansin azuh computer khou lyan e. Peyna nchiwna zauc nuh khang lou e. Meic khat nic khat nic zaucthay khang swlou e. Button guay khou baansin guay tei hylou e. Button tei nym lana kaguayna tei zauc nuh e. Baansin guay pangc khoutei bomber guay tei rui lungning kahitow hian e. Mi khoutei Steel Bomber khatnic Black Bird Plane guay kazauh e. Kaniw zamh target acuracy tei nchinlou e.

Science Museum rui nchamnac nunc khang peyna gaengmei tii e. Kaniw rui latrik khou nchambammei guay tei science museum khou mik kahak rui how mphang e, kabaanc kahak rui sinna zauc nuh e. Mihei rui science zamh theory khatnic practice kanei zamh gaatmei twn tei tinthuihlou e.Science rui maansei khang tiimei gaengmei guay tei mik hu khou nthanna tihowlou e. Mihei rui science ncham khang lungh tithaulou e.

KATHAIDWAN

1. Narrative Essay tabui cho? Narrative Essay akumhna hy ni cho?
2. Kabangc khou tiiloumei lam guay pangc khorui akhat kadaana Narrative Essay latrian 20-25 dou hy o.

Thalon Cave, Malaengmai (Loktak), Manipur State Museum.

16.3 MAKUMHNA HYMEI ESSAY
(Imaginative Essay)

Imaginative Essay Writing twmei thu lungning makum khou na kasiamhthauna hymei latdangv zaat ta Makumhna Hymei Latdangv twna thay e. Mihei latdangv hybammei mei zamh panty khou khatsihnic pat kan makmei, howlou kan makmei lwnlung ta lungning makum rui duancthau lana hymei ta e. Latkamv swna kabangc khou 'Imaginative Essay' khat zauc kho.

(1) AI CHIEF MINISTER SWETHEI

Ai Manipur Chief Minister swethei Manipur chingh-nzaengc nchamcna daicthau khang karamc ni. Manipur khou gaymei kalaihmei phungcguang khang sw pwni. Mihei azamh kabiswmei athouc the. Ai Chief Minister swethei taangaymakna taanc nimei taanv asaekc nai e. Miguay kiu thu -

Reymei khou latrik nchammei khou kathuk tii pwni. Manipur khou education lwan khou kalaihmei phungcguang khang sw pwni. Quality education phungguang khang nthukna sinthau pwni. Latrik diangcna thaymei, kathouc khou lunghgutmei, kagunc naimei nunc ta dinhmei tisw pwni. Kaniw ta chakhuang champouhlou pwni. Taanv pangc khou dinhmei nunc khang bwphy daicna tii pwni. Kaniw ta chakhuang champouhlou pwni. Kalam thu dinhmei nunc hei nthei zamh dilungnac ta kasiamhmei nunc the. Namv namv khou khatnic kaidai kabamv thuih khou government school guay hei ti-kaluanthau dat lana free education hei alauc guay khang tii pwni.

Kaneimei khou, chingh-zaengc chaeng-pumh nchamcna gay khang khatnic kabamv kathuih ntwn-chakaan puatphunghmei khatnic meictuanghmei gari tat nuh khang chaeng kasiamh rey pwni. Manipur hei kadam kathumh pat pwkhou kadam kanei hei chinghramv e. Mi kadam kanei hei daicthaumei khou, chaeng-pumh khou, latrik thaymei khou gaat re. Kumpui zaengrui Manipur zamh kadam kanei chinghramv khou daicthaumei taanvmung guay kadaiswna sinthau pwni. Chinghramv nsaamei guay hei puatthuak tiipat geicna syan-dui patmei lwan khou Manipur kapwm ta nkhav ngammei sw khang taanv sinthau pwni. Nngouh, thingding, mpeih-riangding makuat thau pwni khatnic mihei rui Manipur zamh economy khou gaeng daihmei tisw pwni.

Kathumhmei khou, Manipur chingh nzaengc lautaanhmei state re. Kumna chinghramv hei chinghlau taanhmei khangsuangc gayranvmei ramhbang linghmei farm - tangat farm, phuairiau farm, tingthaibang farm, syandui patnuhmei phwnling farm mi guay hei sinthau pwni. Chinghlau khou chabaa khatnic chemical fertilizer sinswna taancpat ruaicpat geih khang sw pwni. Manipur Kakwn kakuaic khou marketing facilities khatnic transport services tinai pwni. Mihei

rui Manipur kakwn kakuaic khatnic chyngram khou puatthuak guay town khatnic kaidai kathyan guay khou phungcpatna tizuanc pwni.

Manipur khou industry daicthau khang khatnic chabwan nunc taanv sw nuh khang dilungmei geicna kazauh nuhmei industry geicna lingcthau pwni. Agro-forest industry lingcthau pwni. Tourism industry daicthau khang sw pwni. Chingh khou model town geicna kasiamhthau pwni. Chingh nzaengc nchamcna kathaek khatna khou daicthau khang taanvsw pwni.

Ai Chief Minister swethei syantu duitumei swmaan pwni. Ai kahak syantu duitu ni tu hamh e. Puiruhnac taanv nthanna taanc pwni. Taanv-dui taanh khang kathaek kathaek theilayna combined examination sw pwni khatnic gay liang liangmei nunc ta taanv khou laagut pwni. Mi hei rui taanvgutmei khou corruption zaat guay sw amaan pwni.

State income maekna daicthau saengcthaumei taanv taanc ngammak ge. Kumhpui zaengrui government zamh tax guay khuam chuyna khuamthau pwni. Government zamh income guang nuhmei chaeng azuh sinthau pwni. Manipur hei syan-dui lam khou karaana ding ngammei tisw khang syan patmei chaeng azuh sinthau pwni khatnic mi income guay tei rui Manipur chingh-nzaengc nchamcna daicthau khang sw pwni.

Kaganv theilayna India Neihpat taanvlwan guay hei laancdaih khang sw pwni. Trans-Asian Super Highway guangmei lev Manipur daicthaumei lwan hei kaluan nchamc khang sw pwni. Indo-Myanmar Border Trade hei tigaythau khang sw pwni. Miguay hei rui Manipur khang gaengmei khatnic daicthaumei phungcguang nimei lwan khou kadow chaamei tisw pwni.

Nkhamhmei khou, ai rui Manipur zamh Chief Minister swethei work culture tinaina meic kathuihna taanv ranvna taanhmei, taanc chuyna taanhmei state khat tisw pwni. Mihei rui puiruhnac lungning, mikzaw tikalaih khang sw pwni. Puiruhnac lungning khatnic mikzaw kalaih pwkhou Manipur kailaih pwni. Kumna Manipur khou kalaihmei phungcguang khang twmei khou ai lev puiruhnac chwn khat lungh khatna swna tatgut khang karamc pwni. Puiruhnac chwn thayna tat khang sw pwni. Puiruhnac chwn akhang nic achwn the.

KATHAIDWAN

1. Imaginative Essay tabui cho? Imaginative Essay akumhna hy ni cho?
2. Kabangc khou tiiloumei latbamv pangc khourui khat kapahna Imaginative Essay khat hy o.

   (a) Ai IAS Officer khat swethei
   (b) Ai Medical Officer khat swethei
   (c) Manipur khou maingamv gay kho twethei
   (d) Aniw kandic khou nwmtatmei swmaan kho twethei

CHADAADWAN
(Test-5)

Full Marks - 50
Kaganv - Minit 60

1. Duina latrian 6/7 hy o. 5 x 4 = 20

   (a) Latpuanh Tatdyn tabui cho? Kalam asaekc hyna dinc o.
   (b) Descriptive Essay tabui cho? Kalam asaekc hyna dinc o.
   (c) Narrative Essay tabui cho? Kalam asaekc hyna dinc o.
   (d) Imaginative Essay tabui cho? Kalam asaekc hyna dinc o.

2. Tiiloumei latbamv khou hei nang rui nnguihmei khat lam khou Descritive Essay khat latrian 20-25 dou hy o. 1 x 15 = 15

   (a) National Highway 37
   (b) Tamenglong Town
   (c) Guipwang

3. Tiiloumei latbamv khou hei nang rui nnguihmei khat lam khou Imaginative Essay hy o. 1 x 15 = 15

   (a) Ai MLA swethei
   (b) Ai IAS Officer swethei
   (c) Ai Doctor swethei
   (d) Ai Writer khat swethei

17.0 LUCHYAM LWN THAYMEI

Luchyam hei katitna rui kabah peyna tii ngammei ramhi akhat re. Mi ramhi tihei kalwn thay nthan khang ramhthaymei khatnic nkauhmei nyngtyng gut re. Luchyam tihei kalwn thay khang reymei khou luchyam tei lunghgutna pacdat pacdat nina e. Latkaeng guay zamh mpaeng kabac guay tei thay khang karamhmei ruc khou latkaeng zamh kalungc khou mbinhna luangc bammei kabac tei nic kalwn thay khang karamc nina e. Mitangv tei luchyam zamh kadai swmei kadai swmakmei latlam guay tei kadaapat nina e. Kadai swmei latlam guay tei khat tangv khat hui kariulou pwkhou luchyam lwn tei dinc nuh pwni e. Kabangc khou tiiloumei latkamv hei zauc kho.

Apui Akhang

Apui akhang,
Ramh gaat tuang maek,
Ntangh the kataana akhang.

Apui akhang,
Ntian mak kai gay' ta,
Howtii mak khiuhkhingh.

Apui akhang,
Kahaw mak bamvkauh,
Kage maek dyn nic.

Apui pamv nungc,
Suan bam ni e,
Kamei nchamloumei lu ngaana akhwan rui.

Apui pamv nungc,
Thuanc bam ni e,
Kakaipouc Damhmeipu ta.

- Ragongning Gangmei

Luchyam lwn dinhmei

Luchyam lwn dinhmei khou thowrui hy tu cho, tabui lam khou hy tu cho, hymei rui tabui kahawna hy tu cho twmei khatnic luchyam zamh duiriang kalungc khou luangc bammei kabac tei dinclou pwni. Kumna karuc khou luchyam hei kabangc khou hyloumei hei kumcna dinc nuh e.

Karuc khou tiiloumei luchyam hei Ragongning Gangmei rui hy tuang e. Luchyam khouhei hymei rui ndauh bammei thu mbaanv Damhmei ta amuc makna lusuanna thuancku bam ni e twmei ravsuai e. Mi mbaanv hei Ravguangc rui ramhguayna ntanghna damclou e, gaat tuang maek ge. Kumna hymei rui Ravguangc baansyam tihei zaucna pian e. Kaigaymei saamhgaymei ta ntian mak ge, kachaekc daandi, khiuhkhingh ta nic howtii mak ge. Saenghmei daihmei swna bamvkauh bammei ta nic kahaw thuai mak ge, zanhtatmei dyn nic kakhang kage nai thuai mak ge. Alauc nunc khang kapui pamv hei gay liangmei bamv swmei kumcna hymei rui Ravguangc baansyam mbaanv tihei ramh kataana pangc khou kahaw liangmei bamv swna ning e. Pui pamv khou bamna alau rui ramhbaih kataa ning mak kumcna hymei rui nic Ravguangc baansyam khou kalung kaphumhlou bam khou baihmei ta howtii tuang maek ge. Hymei rui Ravguangc baansyam ramgai khouhei kapanty kanuaina bam ni e. Ravguangc baansyam guay rui kakhou luchyam lat nchamlou e. Kakaeng ntangh mak sihnic lungning nthanmei alauc lat kumc nthuih makmei luchyam lat khou hymei rui Mbaanv kapwm damcloumei Kaipouc ta amuc makna lusuanna thuanc bammei ta kahaw e. Mihei hymei zamh kahaw liangmei e. Miguay hei hymei chwn swna mi luchyam khouhei ndauhlou e.

KATHAIDWAN

(1) Mwangsav rui daw khang

Luchyam hei pac lana kabangc khou tiiloumei latthanv guay hei dinhmei rui thanv pwni khatnic nchamnac nunc rui mwangsav rui daw pwni.

ANIW AKHATNA DE

Aniw kabamv kabamv baic sihnic,
Aniw kalat kalat baic sihnic,
Aniw kariak kariak baic sihnic,
Aniw kalwn kalwn baic sihnic,
Aniw chanaa-punav raana de.
Aniw akhat na de.

Aniw guang lungc reymei
Aniw guang lungc nkhamhmei,
Aniw neihpat neihkey lunghmei,
Aniw nliang nruangc lunghmei
Aniw dilungmei nac raana de,
Aniw akhat na de.

Aniw mik khou zaatc khaklangh mak ge,
Aniw lung khou ravchap khaklangh mak ge,
Aniw chwn khou ntu-nggaanv baih mak ge,
Aniw pangc khou kaipouc bangh baih mak ge,
Aniw kapwmna nchamc rap de,
Aniw akhat na de.

- Ragongning Gangmei

Latthanv

1. Karuc khou tiiloumei luchyam zamh latkw saa o.
2. Mi luchyam khou hei hymei rui 'Aniw chanaa-punav raana de' twmei hei thow thow ta cho?
3. Hymei rui 'Aniw dilungmei raana de' twmei hei thow thow ta cho?
4. 'Aniw kapwmna nchamc rap de' twmei hei tabuibui lam khou cho?
5. Mi luchyam khou hei hymei rui kahawmei kiu tabui ta cho?

18.0 PARAGRAPH HYMEI

Latlam khat hamhethei pary kumhmei hykhou latlangv hamhethei latthaek patna hymei hei tatnah e. Mi kumhmei latlangv hamhethei lattaek tihei paragraph twna kaw e. Mi kumhmei paragraph hei pahmei nunc khou latthaek naina pacnii khang khatnic ningtow gaymei tipatlou e. Paragraph khouhei lungning khou ningmei kabiswmei latlam khat khat kazauh e. Mi kabiswmei latlam tihei latrian asaekc rui saa kaduamna hylou e. Paragraph khou hei kabiswmei latlam ta ndauhmei latrian ta English khou **Topic Sentence** kaw e.

Paragraph hymei khou latkaeng heiczu, latrian heiczu rui sw nina e twmei maek ge. Hy bammei kabiswmei latlam tei katwn chaana hylouna mi tatei kaduammei latkaeng latrian azuh rui kapwan swlouna 'gaymei paragraph' twmei tei tisw e.

Gaymei paragraph hy khang kabangc khou tiiloumei thiak hei ningtow o.

(a) Hy bammei paragraph khoutei kabiswmei latlam khatna hy o. Kabiswmei latlam ndauhmei latrian 'topic sentence' tei katwn chaamei khat khou hylou nuh e, tihkic geih thu mi hei paragraph kahouh khou hamhethei luaimei khou hy raphrap e.

(b) Hy bammei latrian guay tei duanc chuyloumei latrian sw nina e.

(c) Nuhkamv latkaeng guay kaluaic phikphik lak nina e.

(d) Paragraph tei pacniimei pat khang hylou nina e.

(e) Paragraph zamh topic sentence - kabiswmei latlam tei nthanna lungning khou dinglou rey nina e.

(f) Paragraph khou naimei kabiswmei latlam tatei kaduammei latkwm latgwan gaymei, gaymei latrian guay rui nkhavlouna kabah tithay chuylou nina e.

(g) Kabiswmei latlam tei lev kariang nai thuai makmei latkaeng, lukaeng, latrian tikazauh lak nina e.

Chadaamei swna tiilou bammei Paragraph hei kathaina zauc kho.

(1) PUMH KALWMEI ZAMH GAENGMEI

Aseicdou kaanc hei tuzi zangvzi makmei taektw tu-zangvna pumh swkasic bammei peyna nai e.

Maansei khang daic liangmei lanv thu pumhgaymei hei e, pumh gayna bam khang tingmik pum pumh kalwmei kage nai e. Pumh kalwmei twmei hei pumh naatnu guay ta tikalung kalwna kagat naina taanv taanc-ruaicna sinswmei ta e. Phay-baanh tanh khang kalwmei, ntinghriang rou tanh khang kalwmei, ngaengv tanh khang kalwmei - mi kumhmei kalwmei zaat peyna nai e. Pumh kalw pwkhou talanvdui pat re. Talanvdui patmei thei pumh zamh mphuammei siimei guay mpaeng pat kan e. Thiulaa saengcna laapat laagut pwkhou mpwan gaymei phuan khou tigutna zei khou mphuammei guay pumh khourui sw-nthanpat re. Pumh khou zei nthanmei luangcna pumh tigaylou e. Pumh kalwmei hei aniw rui aniw raana pumc ta tigay khang swmei taanv e. Kumhpui zaengrui aniw pumc hei suhmei nuhmei maekna bam khang khatnic ndui ndaana bam khang pumh kalwmei hei kage naimei kabiswmei khat re. Mi na hamhna pumh kalwmei rui aniw ta panty lungsingna lungh khang tiswlou e.

Tiilou bammei paragraph lam khouhei kathai khang kabangc khouhei latthanv tiilou e. Mi guay hei daw o.

(i) Tiiloumei paragraph khouhei kabiswmei latbamv kiu tabui twn tei kazauh bo? Pacpat ro.

(ii) Baihmei kabiswmei lat nai bo? Akumhmei tei ch? Pacpat ro.

(iii) Paragraph khouhei kabiswmei latbamv lev kariang nai thuai makmei latrian nai bo? Akumhmei tei cho? Pacpat ro.

(iv) Mi paragraph tihei tigay ranv nuhmei kachaeng nai bo?

Latthanv 1 zamh dawmei

Mi paragraph zamh kabiswmei latbamv hei paragraph luaimei twn tei nai e. Kabiswmei latbamv -

"Aniw pumc hei suhmei nuhmei maekna ndui ndaa bam khang khatnic panty lungsingna lungh khang pumh kalwmei hei kage naimei kabiswmei khat re."

Latthanv 2 zamh dawmei

Paragraph luaimei khou hei kabiswmei latbamv ruckhou latbamv khat nic kazauh e. Mikiu thu - "Pumh kalwmei rui aniw ta panty lungsingna lungh khang tiswlou e."

Latthanv 3 zamh dawmei

Kahouh raph twkhou "Aseicdou kaanc hei tuzi zangvzi makmei taektw tu-zangvna pumh swkasic bammei meic peyna nai e." twmei hei pumh kalwmei lev kariang tinai nic nuh e, tinai mak nic nuh de. Kumna tiiloumei paragraph zamh kabiswmei latbamv ta machuang rap thuai mak ge.

Latthanv 4 zamh dawmei

Paragraph kahouh khou naimei latrian saenghmei khatnic luaimei khou nkhamh liangmei latrian hei laaganc ethei paragraph hei gay ranv pwni e.

KATHAIDWAN

Karuc khou paragraph kathaimei hei kumcna kabangc khou tiiloumei pargraph guay hei pac lana kathai o. Kumna nang raana zamh gaymei para-graph hy ngam khang sw o.

(1) PAM GAYMEI

Pam rui panty zaythau e, pam rui panty swkasic e. Puipu nunc rui saa e - "Meic changhmei ta nduangh ethei changh e, changh makmei ta nduangh ethei changh mak ge." Kumna pam hei kalwn thayna nduangh khang kage nai e. Gay makmei pam kiu thu kheyliak gay makmei, baley thaymei, kaihouhmei, kaliau simei, kathouc kadwan thay makmei, nzi nlaumei, mi kumhmei pam tei the. Kamei rui kapammei nunc ta mi kumhmei chaeng khou khithkhitna zaykeylou e. Kathouc kadwan thaymei, kachangcmei, latling saamei, latpiumei, kaganvthaymei, alinghmei, chakhuangthaymei, chakuththaymei, karaana khang ningmakpui mei - mi kumhpui mei tei gaymei pam kiu the. Mi kumhmei pam ta nduangh ethei panty hei gaymei biak thu kalaih guang e. Nang pam gay ethei

nang gay pwni, nang gay ethei nang pam nic gay pwni. Nang pammei lwn khourui nang lwn thay e. Pam ling kiu thu kage naipui ganv khou nkhavpui mei tei the. Pam gaymei thu chanaa punav khangsuangc sihnic gaymei lam nai e.

(2) KHAVSOWMEI

Duithuak hei aniw tuang lanv e. Duithuak khou dui khatnic dui lungc khou khav, tanyang, gaa, niangckhuaickuak, khavkuangh, guiphuap nai e. Mi guay hei aniw khang gaeng e. Mi guay hei aniw khang taektw khatnic syan-dui patpui chaeng e. Khav-gaa kadyng khatna khou laanii khourui duithuak khou khavsowna aniw rui khav, gaa, tanyang heiczumei ta swluai e, swmaan e. Mi hei rui nthuanh, ndouh khatnic tingsaeng zaeng khang naibam nimei guay ta swmaan e. Duithuak dui hei maansei nwtu nwzangv e, khouringh khounah, nruay thauruay guay nic zangv e. Khavsowna duithuak dui ta swphwam e, dui khou hu mpatlou e. Mi kumhmei duithuak dui hei zutu zuzangvmei nunc naunianmei, theihmei suhmei pat re. Duithuak khou khavsowmei hei gaymakmei taanv e. Mi kumhmei taanv hei nthei khang hu khang ningmakmei, swkasicmei, swkamut kamaimei taanv e. Khavsowmei hei aniw taanc lak nina e, meic baihmei nunc ta nic ti-taanc lak nina e. Khavsowmei hei twanlyammei nunc taanv e. Mihei dihriak rui nuh mak ge, kailuangc riak rui nic nuh mak ge. Dihriak theilayna khavsowpui mei ta nym lana kangkai tibam nuh e, mat tikhap nuh e; kaneimei kariuna mat nic tikhap kangkai nic tibam nuh e.

(3) TING

Ravguangc ramdam khou ting hei charynmei gaengmei akhat re. Ramh kataana - maansei, khouringh khounah,nkav nkit, thingbang mwnbang, gannwang paanvnu, laupuk lauzaengc guay khang dui kage nai e. Miguay khang hei kakwm kaganv naina ting hei tiriukeylou e. Ting riukeylou ethei ramhguayna kathw kabaengc kakpat re, kazik-kapwang kasatpat re, karwan nrwan kathai nthai e, nkav nkit guay chaapat re. Khav-gaa chaapat re. Laupuk lauzaengc khou nap, gannuy paanvnu tigaythaulou e. Ting riuna duinac thuak guay dui tiluangclou e. Mihei rui khouringh khounah, nthau nruay guay khang dui tinailou e. Ting riukeyna dui luangcna nwmbangc ngouhbangc khou naimei chabaa guay nzanh liklou e. Ting riu makmei ta tingkaenghmei kaw e. Tingkaengc ethei phwnling kapwan theic e, thingzik mwnzik kasat ngam mak ge, laupuk lauzaengc nap theic e, duilau guay kangcbak ge, khav-gaa chaapat ngam mak ge, kapyan karav pat

geic e. Ting riumei hei rui nwmbangc ngouhbangc tikalwanlou e, laupuk lauzaengc tigaylou e, khav-gaa, nkav nkit kataana tichaapatlou e. Ting ruimei rui karik karuc, kapyan karav swmaanlouna ramh kataana ta tikaluanlou e. Aniw rui pikuan duichaihmei kumc mbaanv pikuan hei duichaih khang Ravguangc baansiam khou ting riukeylou bam khang swlou e.

Karuc khou tiilou bammei paragraph lam khouhei kathai khang kabangc khouhei latthanv tiilou e. Mi guay hei nang raana daw o.

(i) Tiiloumei paragraph khouhei kabiswmei latbamv kiu tabui twn tei kazauh bo ? Pacpat ro.

(ii) Baihmei kabiswmei lat nai bo ? Akumhmei tei cho/Pacpat ro.

(iii) Paragraph khouhei kabiswmei latbamv lev kariang nai thuai makmei latrian nai bo ? Akumhmei tei cho ? Pacpat ro.

(iv) Mi paragraph tihei tigay ranv nuhmei kachaeng nai bo ?

(v) Tiiloumei latbamv pangc khouhei akumhmei tei paragraph kanei kathumh patna hy nuhmei nai bo ? Nai ethei akumhmei paragraph tei cho. Nang raana paragraph tei hypat dat ro.

19.0 LATCHYAM ZANC PHUAKMEI

Akumhna latchyam zanc phuak ne ?

Latchyam khat hei pac lana mi khoutei kazauhmei kabiswmei latbamv tei thay nina e. Kumna kabiswmei latbamv ta du nduanghmei latrian guay nai pwni - miguay tatei nic kalwn thay nina e. Miguay hei mincna pac pwkhou latbamv tei thay nthan pwni. Mi tangvrui latchyam tei lev chaanahmei zanc khat phuaklou nina e. Kazanc tei nuhkamv duimei gay e khatnic lungning khou thay raph twmei zanc sw nina e. Kabangc khou tiiloumei latchyam guay hei kathai lana kazanc phuak go.

(1) Mi latchaym hei pac lana kazanc phuak go.

Ruangmei pary theilayna puakthau puaksiak ganv khou Ravguangc rui tingkauh, mbaanv khatnic taruaih damclou khwan e. Ravguangc rui **pui** khat damclou khwan e. Kata **Dampaapui** twna kaw khwan e. Kandih nam khou naimei khatnic dui khou naimei ramh kataana Dampaapui rui damclou khwan e.

Thaurey liang khou Ravguangc rui Dampaapui ta damclou khwan e. Ravguangc rui maanseina ta Ravguangc maengc khou kalwn luicna damh khang saa khwan e. Daampaapui Ravguangc ta kachuc bam khwan e tihkic kalwn thu how mak khwan e, kakhwan na chu khwan e. Kumna Ravguangc lwn luicna maanseina ta damc nuh mak khwan e. Kakhou Ravguangc lwn lyanlou khang saa khwan e. Khoutei Ravguangc rui kakhou kalwn lyanlou the. Kumna Dampaapui rui maanseina ta Ravguangc lwn luicna damclou khwan the. Kumetihkic maanseina khou ringhmei bumaengc tiilou ngam mak khwan e. Khoutei Ravguangc rui saa khwan e 'Nang rui maanseina ta alwn luicna damclou the. Kumthena nang rui damcloumei maanseina khou ringhmei bumaengc tei thu Ai rui tiilou pwni.' Kumna Ravguangc rui maanseina khoutei kathiu mbunlouna ringhmei bumaengc tei tiilou the. Kumna maansei hei Ravguangc lwn luihmei ringhmei bumaengc naimei sw the.

Latchyam khou naimei kabiswmei latbamv guay -

- Puakthau puaksiak khou Ravguangc rui tingkauh, mbaanv khatnic taruaih damclou khwan e.

- Ravguangc rui Dampaapui ta damclou khwan e.

- Dampaapui rui ramh kataana - kadu naina ringhmei khatnic kadu maekmei kaguayna ta damclou khwan e.

- Maansei ta Dampaapui rui Ravguangc lwn luicna Ravguangc maengc khou damclou khwan e. Kumna Ravguangc rui ringhmei thiu mbunlouna maansei khou ringhmei bumaengc tiilou khwan e.

Mi guay hei zaucna kakhanh pwkhou kabangc khou tiiloumei zanc kanei kak khou khat kapahthauna phuaklou nuh e.

- 1) Puakthau Puaksiak
  2) Mbaanv Damhmei

(2) Mi latchyam hei pac lana kazanc phuak go.

Nsaamei dak khou kaganv swmaan makna lunghgut gaymei lwan khat khou kaganv piuna taanv khat swmei ta Englishlat khou hobby twna thay e. Latkamv khang saa pwkhou nchamnac nunc rui school khou kaganv geicna latrik nchamna ryanraa the twna kai khou guangna nthaekcmei swna lusuan chadaamei, pikuan khou ganbwan ramhbwan linghmei, mwnpic khou dungc lana luchyam-latchyam hymei, kailung karuhmei, nap-gan suangc chadaamei, latrik baihmei gaymei pahmei, laamh chadaamei - mi kumhmei guay hei gaymei hobby e twna duina saa nuh e. Mi kumhmei hei rui nchamnac nunc ta gaymei panty, kachangcmei panty khatnic nthei thangc gaengmei nac khat khat sw khang kalwan tiswlou e.

Kazanc ----------

(3) Ginbwanpou hei kamwang tanc e, lat agii thay e. Kamei kapammei nunc ta school chaeng khou lat agii raphrap e. Lat agii tanc langv tina kata kapammei nunc rui tat nchamc nii mak ge. Lat agii khourui agai nzutzut khou sihnic nai kan e. Lat agii khourui ntumeinac asaekc thu kapna tat kanmei nic nai e. Kai khou nic kapui kapu mwang dawna agii raphrap tina latsav chu tanhtan e. Ai nchumc de twna ningna agii raphrapmei gay mak ge. Lat agii khourui lungning swkasic e, lungpuam pat re. Khat khat khang lungning khou kabamv tiilouna lat saamei, pary swna rahmei gay e. Lat saageimei khangsuangc lungning khou khaengvkeyloumei gay hian e. Kaduklou thaymei, kasut thaymei, kwmlou thaymei miguay hei gaymei lwan e.

Kazanc ----------

Tamkhiangthai
Photo Courtesy : Ragongning Gangmei

Printed at BCPW